

Dental Extraction

Multi-Disciplinary Perspectives

Dr Shadab Ahmed



BlueRose ONE^{.com}
S t o r i e s M a t t e r

New Delhi • London

BLUEROSE PUBLISHERS

India | U.K.

Copyright © Dr Shadab Ahmed 2026

All rights reserved by author. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior permission of the author. Although every precaution has been taken to verify the accuracy of the information contained herein, the publisher assumes no responsibility for any errors or omissions. No liability is assumed for damages that may result from the use of information contained within.

BlueRose Publishers takes no responsibility for any damages, losses, or liabilities that may arise from the use or misuse of the information, products, or services provided in this publication.



For permissions requests or inquiries regarding this publication,
please contact:

BLUEROSE PUBLISHERS
www.BlueRoseONE.com
info@bluerosepublishers.com
+91 8882 898 898
+4407342408967

ISBN: 978-81-69906-20-3

Cover design: Anuj
Typesetting: Tanya Raj Upadhyay

First Edition: October 2026

INTRODUCTION

Dental extraction remains one of the most frequently performed procedures in clinical dentistry, yet its success extends far beyond the technical act of removing a tooth. Modern extraction demands a comprehensive understanding of diagnosis, treatment planning, surgical principles, patient assessment, pain and anxiety management, medical considerations and postoperative care.

Dental Extraction: Multidisciplinary Perspectives presents dental extraction as an integrated clinical discipline, bringing together perspectives from multiple specialties/ areas of dentistry and allied healthcare. The book explores the principles of simple dental extraction while emphasizing the importance of careful case selection, radiographic assessment, anatomical knowledge, prevention and management of complications, and evidence-based decision-making.

Particular attention is given to medically compromised and geriatric patients, paediatric considerations, oral and maxillofacial surgical approaches, Anesthesia and pain control, infection prevention, emergency management, and the relationship between extraction and subsequent restorative, prosthodontic, implant, and orthodontic treatment.

The book also highlights the importance of multidisciplinary collaboration. A tooth extraction should not be viewed as an isolated procedure; it may influence the patient's overall oral health, function, esthetics, nutrition, psychological well-being, and future rehabilitation. Effective communication among dentists across all specialists and other healthcare professionals can therefore play a crucial role in achieving safe and predictable outcomes.

Designed for undergraduate and postgraduate dental students, general dental practitioners, dental specialists, and healthcare professionals, this book aims to bridge foundational knowledge with contemporary clinical practice. By combining surgical principles with patient-centered care and multidisciplinary

thinking, ***Dental Extraction: Multidisciplinary Perspectives*** seeks to provide a practical and comprehensive resource for understanding one of dentistry's most fundamental yet clinically significant procedures.

Dr. Shadab Ahmed, MDS

Administration Advisor

Mithila Dental College & Hospital

Lalit Narayan Mithila University

Kameshwar Nagar, Darbhanga, Bihar

FOREWORD

It is with great pleasure and professional pride that I present this textbook, ***Dental Extraction: Multidisciplinary Perspectives***, co-authored with my former student and now accomplished colleague, **Dr. Shadab Ahmed**. This work represents not only the culmination of decades of surgical experience but also the continuity of academic mentorship and collaboration across generations.

Dental extractions, often perceived as routine procedures, are in fact nuanced interventions that demand a thoughtful and integrative approach—especially in the current era of interdisciplinary care. ***The need to understand extractions not merely from a procedural standpoint, but through the lens of allied specialties such as periodontics, prosthodontics, anaesthesiology, radiology, and systemic medicine, cannot be overstated.***

*Drawing from over three decades of practice as an Oral and Maxillofacial Surgeon and having had the privilege of serving as a **Vice Chancellor** in academic leadership, I have come to appreciate the vital intersection of clinical precision, academic rigour, and collaborative learning. This book is our attempt to bring those principles to life.*

Dr. Shadab Ahmed brings a fresh and dynamic perspective to this text, reflecting both the depth of his training and the clarity of his clinical insight. *Together, we have aimed to bridge foundational principles with current best practices, making this book a relevant resource for dental students, postgraduate trainees, and seasoned practitioners alike.*

I would also like to express my sincere appreciation to all the *contributing authors* whose chapters enrich this volume with their specialised knowledge and diverse clinical experiences. Their commitment to academic excellence and patient-centred care has added tremendous value to this collective work. Each chapter reflects their dedication to advancing the field through evidence-based practice and interdisciplinary thinking.

My hope is that this textbook not only informs clinical practice but also inspires readers to approach even the most common procedures with renewed curiosity, respect for anatomy, and an appreciation for interdisciplinary wisdom.

Prof. Dr. R. S. Neelakandan

MDS, IBOMS, Fellow IFHNOS (USA)

Ex-Vice Chancellor

MAHER Deemed University

West K.K. Nagar, Chennai, Tamil Nadu

Dedicated To “My Guru & Godfather”



Prof Dr R S Neelakandan

MDS, IBOMS, Fellow, IFHNOS (USA)

Oral & Maxillofacial Surgeon

Prof R S Neelakandan has been a pioneer in the field of *Oral & Maxillofacial Surgery* since 1987. An alumnus of *Madras Dental College*, he was adjudged the Best Outgoing Student in his batch. He was commissioned as a dental officer in the *Army Dental Corps* between 1980 and 1985, following which he resumed his specialization in Oral & Maxillofacial Surgery at his alma mater. On completing his post-graduation, he underwent training in the *Department of Plastic & Reconstructive Surgery* at *Govt. General Hospital, Madras Medical College*.

He is especially interested in *Surgical Oncology, Reconstructive & Regenerative Surgery* and has completed *Advanced Craniofacial and Distraction Osteogenesis* training at *Leipzig University, Germany*. He has also been qualified for *Fellowship in Head & Neck Oncology* awarded jointly by the *International Federation of Head & Neck Oncologic Societies* and *Memorial Sloan Kettering Cancer Center, New York, USA*.

He has to his credit over 50 international and national publications and authored a manual on *Distraction Osteogenesis*. He has conducted extensive research in the field of Distraction Osteogenesis of the facial skeleton and has earned three notable patents for Distraction Devices during his tenure in the field.

Table of Contents

Chapter 1 - Dental Extraction - Art, Competence and Aptitude	1
Chapter 2 - Anaesthetic Considerations in Dental Extractions	5
Chapter 3 - Radiological Evaluation of the Extraction Socket.....	27
Chapter 4 - Pathological Considerations in Dental Extraction.....	35
Chapter 5 - Implant Placement After Tooth Extraction: Timing, Surgical Principles and Clinical Considerations.....	43
Chapter 6 - Surgical Preservation & Rehabilitation of the Extraction Socket.....	55
Chapter 7 - Orthodontic Dental Extraction	86
Chapter 8 - Periodontic Preservation & Rehabilitation of the Extraction Socket	94
Chapter 9 - Endodontic Preservation & Rehabilitation of the Extraction Socket	108
Chapter 10 - Root Canal Therapy as Alternative to Dental Extraction - Challenges, Progress and Evidence-Based Approach.....	127
Chapter 11 - Prosthodontic Preservation and Rehabilitation of the Extraction Socket - A Comprehensive Review of Prosthetically Driven Extraction Socket Management, Alveolar Ridge Preservation and Rehabilitation	137
Chapter 12 - The Role of the Public Health Dentist in Dental Extractions.....	174
Chapter 13 - Pedodontic Perspective for Dental Extractions: Why Extraction Would Be Indicated?.....	187
Chapter 14 - Conscious Sedation A Relaxed Approach to Tooth Extraction	211
Chapter 15 - Artificial Intelligence in Dental Extraction	228

CHAPTER 1

DENTAL EXTRACTION - ART, COMPETENCE AND APTITUDE



Dr Shadab Ahmed, MDS

Oral & Maxillofacial Surgeon

Administration Advisor

Mithila Dental College & Hospital

Lalit Narayan Mithila University

Kameshwar Nagar, Darbhanga, Bihar



Prof Dr R S Neelakandan

MDS, IBOMS, Fellow, IFHNOS (USA)

Oral & Maxillofacial Surgeon

Ex-Vice Chancellor

Meenakshi Academy of Higher Education & Research

MAHER (Deemed to be University)

Chennai, Tamil Nadu

The Beginning of Dental Extraction

Substantiation from Civilizations, Empires and Kingdoms

- Dental Extraction or the removal of teeth was not invented in the neotribalistic or modernistic sense. There is no single date for when early humans first performed tooth extraction. Instead, the practice evolved over thousands of years from crude, painful methods of dental intervention for removing diseased or painful teeth to more refined techniques used by subsequent civilizations.
- The earliest signs of therapeutic dental intervention—though not dental extraction specifically—date back to the *Palaeolithic* and the subsequent *Neolithic* period. Around 14,000 years ago, evidence of the oldest known dental work was found in the lower molar of a man in *Tuscany, Italy*. Researchers believe that pointed stone tools made of flint were used to drill into the tooth to remove decayed tissue.
- The *Indus Valley Civilization* has yielded evidence of dentistry being practiced as far back as 7000 BC. A site in *Mehrgarh* indicates that this earliest form of dentistry involved curing tooth related disorders with bow-drills operation, perhaps, by skilled bead craftsmen.
- The *Code of Hammurabi*, written during the *Babylonian* era of *Mesopotamia*, reflects the seriousness of dental matters with its "*eye for an eye and a tooth for a tooth*" decree. This law required the removal of a tooth for a severe dental injury, particularly if the offender was of the same social class as the victim. This implies that forcible tooth removal could have been a form of punishment, not just a medical procedure.
- In such manner, vague and ambiguous evidences of therapeutic dental interventions have been found across major historical civilizations of *Sumeria*, *Mesopotamia*, *Babylonia*, *Huaxia* and *Aegyptus*, and later on from ancient kingdoms of *Rome*, *Egypt*, *Greece*, *Arabia* up until the empires and establishments of the *Middle* and *Medieval* ages of the *East Roman Byzantine Empire*, *Ottoman Empire*, *British Empire*, *Andalusian Empire*, *Mongol Empire*, the *Ming and Tong dynasties* and the empire of the *Islamic Caliphates*.
- The *pre-industrial barber surgeons* established their trade with the *Renaissance* period, further documenting and registering their crafts through the *Industrial Revolution*.

- The French surgeon *Pierre Fauchard (The Father of Modern Dentistry)* published *Le Chirurgien Dentiste* in 1728. This comprehensive guide moved the profession away from the crude practices of barber-surgeons and established dentistry as a scientific discipline.

Dental Extraction - From an Unrefined Act to a Distilled Art

- Dental extraction has evolved from a painful, unrefined act performed by non-specialists with crude tools to a modern, distilled art emphasizing minimal trauma, precision, and patient comfort. Advances in anaesthesia, diagnostics and surgical techniques have transformed the procedure from a last resort option into a predictable and manageable part of comprehensive oral healthcare.
- The rudimentary unscientific observations and understandings of our *primordial* and *primeval* ancestors have been painstakingly backed up by meticulous research by the modern generations of dental practitioners and dental researchers.
- The establishment of *dental training schools and colleges* were as much instrumental in distilling the untrained practices of dental extraction as much as the *discovery of anaesthesia* revolutionized dental care. The adoption of *sterile antiseptic techniques* and the technological refinement of *minimally invasive procedural approach* to dental extraction has metamorphosed our understanding about dental therapy.
- Tooth extraction is no longer simply the removal of a tooth, rather the complex and challenging objective of socket preservation and guided tissue regeneration utilizing *Artificial Intelligence, Robotic-Assisted Surgery, Nanotechnology and Biocompatible Tissue Engineering*.
- The dental extraction procedure has evolved from a painful, damaging intervention to a highly controlled surgical art. With ongoing advances in technology, anaesthesia and regenerative medicine, the focus continues to shift toward maximizing patient comfort and autonomy, preserving oral health and ensuring predictable long-term outcomes.

Technological Integration and Blending of Inter-Disciplinary Science in Dental Extraction

- In dental extraction, the integration of technology and inter-disciplinary science leads to more precise, less invasive, and patient-centred

procedures. This blending, importantly, relies on advanced diagnostics, specialized and strategic surgical techniques and a holistic understanding of patient health.

- The emergence of *Digital Workflow* guided by Artificial Intelligence and precise Radiography has found the specialities of dentistry integrating and blending harmonically with each other to achieve a perfect outcome for dental intervention through *restorative pharmacotherapy*, *fundamental physics* and *regenerative tactics*. For the routine placement of a Dental Implant or Ridge Preservation, multiple specialities come together with their own specialized biomaterials and bio-techniques to meet the ultimate goal of total patient satisfaction, both aesthetically and functionally.

Future Research, Trends and Advancements

- Future advancements in dentistry are driven by digital technology (like Artificial Intelligence and 3D Printing), Biomaterials, and Regenerative Medicine - leading to more precise and personalized dental interventions.
- Key trends include *AI-powered Diagnostics and Robotics*, *TeleDentistry*, *Augmented & Virtual Reality*, *Smart Biomaterials*, *Customized Prosthesis*, *Tissue Engineering*, *Regenerative approaches* to grow new tissues, *Nanotechnology*, and a greater focus on sustainability and preventative care through *smart technology*.

BIBLIOGRAPHY:

1. KU Discoveries of Neanderthal Teeth Marks Uncovers Evidence of Prehistoric Dentistry - The University of Kansas, 2017-06-23
2. Early Neolithic Tradition of Dentistry - Coppa, A. Bondioli, L. Cucina et al - Nature, April 6, 2006 , Volume 440 (7085)
3. Oral Health in America: Advances and Challenges [Internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Institute of Dental and Craniofacial Research (US); 2021 Dec. Section 6

CHAPTER 2

ANAESTHETIC CONSIDERATIONS IN DENTAL EXTRACTIONS



Dr. Niveditha Reddy Bezawada, MDS

Assistant Professor

Periodontology

Narayana Dental College and Hospital

Dr. NTR University of Health Sciences

Vijayawada, Andhra Pradesh

-
- Dental extractions are among the most common surgical procedures performed in both general and specialized dental practice. While often considered routine, these procedures require careful anaesthetic planning to ensure patient comfort, pain control and procedural efficiency.
 - Anaesthesia for dental extractions can range from *local anaesthesia* to *general anaesthesia*, depending on factors such as the complexity of the extraction, patient anxiety levels, underlying medical conditions, and the presence of infection or inflammation.
 - This chapter explores the key *anaesthetic considerations for dental extractions*, including the selection of appropriate anaesthetic agents, techniques for administration, management of potential complications and special considerations for medically compromised patients. Understanding these principles is essential for optimizing patient safety and comfort while minimizing the risks associated with anaesthesia.

Types of Anaesthesia in Dental Extraction

Local Anaesthesia -

- Local anaesthetics are reversible nerve conduction blockers leading to loss of sensation without losing consciousness. *Karl Koller*, an

ophthalmic surgeon pioneered the use of *cocaine*, the first local anaesthetic. However due to its high toxic nature and potential for abuse safer alternatives have been discovered over the centuries.

- The basic structure of a local anaesthetic consists of mainly three parts:
 - *Aromatic Ring* – substituted benzene ring, which provides lipid solubility, which is key to penetrate lipid rich membranes like nerve sheath and axolemma.
 - *Intermediate Chain* – Consists of aromatic ring of amine group, either ester bond or amide bond.
 - *Amino Group* – It is of secondary or tertiary amine, that are water soluble in nature aiding drug to retain in solution and interact effectively with aqueous extracellular contents.
- A balance in the lipophilic and hydrophilic ends influence drugs penetration and solubility properties. Modifications to the structure influences the drugs' potency, toxicity and duration of action.

Classification of Local Anaesthetics –

A. *Based on type of bond:-*

- ✓ *Ester type* – contains an ester bond at the intermediate chain (-COO-). These have generally short duration of action, Prone to hydrolysis and high risk of allergy.

Examples – *Procaine, Chlorprocaine, Tetracaine*.

- ✓ *Amide type* – contain amide bond (-NCHO-). These are metabolized in liver, have longer duration of action and low risk of allergy.

Examples – *Lidocaine, Bupivacaine, Mepivacaine*.

B. *Based on route of administration:-*

- ✓ *Injectable anaesthetics*

Low Potency, Short duration – *Procaine, Chlorprocaine*

Intermediate potency and duration – *Lidocaine, Prilocaine*

High potency, Long duration – *Tetracaine (Amethocaine), Bupivacaine, Ropivacaine, Dibucaine (Cinchocaine)*

- ✓ *Surface anaesthetics*

Soluble – *Cocaine, Lidocaine, Tetracaine, Benoxiate*

Insoluble – *Benzocaine, Butylaminobenzoate, Oxethazaine*

Mechanism of action (Local Anaesthetics)

- Local anaesthetics reversibly block nerve conduction by inhibiting influx of sodium ions during upstroke of action potential.
- On administration, LA exists in both ionized and unionized forms. Unionized form diffuses across membrane and ionized form bind to receptors inside sodium channel preventing sodium influx decreasing depolarization and blocking nerve conduction.

Uses of Local Anaesthetics

1. Surface Anaesthesia
2. Infiltration anaesthesia
3. Field Block
4. Nerve Block
5. Spinal Anaesthesia
6. Epidural Anaesthesia
7. Intravenous Regional Anaesthesia

Local Actions

1. Non-selective blockade via sodium permeability increase.
2. Reduces acetylcholine release from motor nerve endings
3. Anaesthesia around skin and paralysis of involuntary muscles.

Systemic Actions

- ✓ **Central Nervous System** - Local anaesthetics (LA's) produce dose-dependent CNS effects, progressing from stimulation to depression. *Cocaine* acts as a potent CNS stimulant, causing euphoria, confusion and convulsions, with potential for respiratory depression and death at high doses. *Procaine* and *synthetic LA's* show minimal CNS effects at clinical doses, but higher doses or accidental IV injection can lead to symptoms such as circum-oral numbness, dizziness and seizures. Initial stimulation occurs through inhibition of inhibitory neurons, with higher doses resulting in decreased neuronal activity.
- ✓ **Cardio Vascular System** - At elevated doses or with inadvertent IV injection, LA's decrease cardiac automaticity, excitability, contractility and conductivity, and increase the effective refractory period (ERP). Drug-specific effects include:

- *Procaine* is not used as an antiarrhythmic.
 - *Procainamide* is a Class IA antiarrhythmic.
 - *Bupivacaine* may cause ventricular tachycardia/fibrillation, while
 - *Lidocaine* has minimal pro-arrhythmic potential and is used as anti-arrhythmic.
- ✓ **Blood Vessels** – LA's typically reduce blood pressure through sympathetic blockade and can cause *vasodilation* at high concentrations. *Bupivacaine* is more vasodilatory, while *Prilocaine* is the least. Toxic doses can lead to cardiovascular collapse.
- ✓ **Other Effects** – *Cocaine* possesses sympathomimetic properties, resulting in vasoconstriction, elevated blood pressure, and tachycardia. *Procaine* and similar local anaesthetics, when administered at high doses, may exert mild anti-cholinergic, antihistaminic, ganglion-blocking, neuromuscular-blocking and smooth muscle relaxant properties, although these effects are clinically insignificant.

General Anaesthesia

General anaesthetics are agents that induce loss of sensation with loss of consciousness. *Opium* and *Alcohol* were the initial agents used. Later *Dr. Horace Wells* demonstrated effect of *Nitrous Oxide* as an anaesthetic followed by *Dr. William Morton* demonstrating effects of *Ether*.

Classification of General Anaesthesia

1. Inhalation – *Sevoflurane, Desflurane, Isoflurane*
2. Gases – *Nitrous Oxide, Cyclopropane*
3. Liquids – *Ether, Halothane, Enflurance, Desflurance*
4. Intravenous Inducing Agents – *Thiopentone Sodium, Propofol, Methohexitone,*
5. Dissociative Anaesthesia – *Ketamine*
6. Neuroleptanalgesia – *Fentanyl + Droperidol*
7. Benzodiazepines – *Diazepam, Lorazepam, Midazolam*

Mechanism of action

- ✓ *Inhalation* and some *Intravenous* agents binds to specific sites on GABA receptor chloride channel activating the receptors that inhibits neurotransmission and depress CNS.
- ✓ *Inhalation* agents also enhance glycine – gated chloride channels to glycine receptors leading to inhibition of neurotransmission.

- ✓ *Ketamine and Nitrous Oxide* bind and inhibit NMDA receptors.

Stages of General Anaesthesia

- ✓ *Stage of analgesia*
- ✓ *Stage of delirium*
- ✓ *Stage of surgical anaesthesia*
- ✓ *Stage of medullary paralysis*

Pre-Anaesthetic Medication

Prior to anaesthesia, certain drugs are given to:-

- ✓ *Decrease anxiety*
- ✓ *Provide amnesia for preoperative period*
- ✓ *Relieve preoperative pain*
- ✓ *Make anaesthesia safer*
- ✓ *Reduce side effects*
- ✓ *Reduce gastric acidity*

Examples – Anti-anxiety agents like *Benzodiazepines* (5 – 10 mg of *Diazepam* is used to reduce anxiety, produce sedation and amnesia), Anti-histamines like *Promethazine* are used for antiemetic, anticholinergic and sedative uses, Anti-emetics like *Domperidone*, *Metoclopramide* or *Ondansetron* are used.

Techniques of Local Anaesthesia

Maxillary Techniques

Supraperiosteal Injection -

- *Technique:* Insert needle near the apex of the target tooth.
- *Nerve Anesthetized:* Terminal branches of superior alveolar nerves.
- *Areas Anesthetized:* Single tooth, associated buccal soft tissue.
- *Indications:* Simple procedures on a single tooth.
- *Contraindications:* Infection or dense bone at site.
- *Advantages:* Simple, high success rate.
- *Disadvantages:* Ineffective in inflamed or infected tissues.
- *Positive Aspiration:* <1%.
- *Alternatives:* PDL, intra-osseous injection.
- *Signs & Symptoms:* Numbness in target area.
- *Safety Features:* Minimal tissue trauma.

- *Precautions:* Avoid over-penetration in children.
- *Failures:* Inadequate depth or poor diffusion.
- *Complications:* Pain, Hematoma.

Periodontal Ligament Injection -

- *Technique:* Needle inserted into periodontal space under pressure.
- *Nerve Anesthetized:* Terminal nerve endings of alveolar nerves.
- *Areas Anesthetized:* Isolated tooth pulp.
- *Indications:* Supplement to failed block or infiltration.
- *Contraindications:* Primary teeth with permanent successors.
- *Advantages:* Limited soft tissue anaesthesia.
- *Disadvantages:* Tissue trauma, short duration.
- *Positive Aspiration:* <1%.
- *Alternatives:* Intra-Osseous, Intra-Septal.
- *Signs & Symptoms:* Immediate anaesthesia, tooth resistance to pressure.
- *Safety Features:* Small volume used.
- *Precautions:* Use correct pressure and volume.
- *Failures:* Improper placement or insufficient pressure.
- *Complications:* Post-op discomfort, localized swelling.

Intra-Septal Injection -

- *Technique:* Injection into interdental septum.
- *Nerve Anesthetized:* Branches of alveolar nerves.
- *Areas Anesthetized:* Hard and soft tissues in limited area.
- *Indications:* Periodontal or minor surgical procedures.
- *Contraindications:* Infection at injection site.
- *Advantages:* Minimal bleeding, localized anaesthesia.
- *Disadvantages:* Limited duration and area.
- *Positive Aspiration:* Rare.
- *Alternatives:* Intra-Osseous, PDL.
- *Signs & Symptoms:* Resistance felt, Blanching.
- *Safety Features:* Low systemic risk.
- *Precautions:* Needle position critical.
- *Failures:* Incorrect needle depth.
- *Complications:* Tissue trauma.

Intra-Crestal Injection -

- *Technique:* Injection at alveolar crest.
- *Nerve Anesthetized:* Local alveolar nerves.
- *Areas Anesthetized:* Localized periodontal tissues.
- *Indications:* Periodontal surgery or implant procedures.
- *Contraindications:* Poor bone density.
- *Advantages:* Fast onset, minimal soft tissue anaesthesia.
- *Disadvantages:* Requires bone penetration.
- *Positive Aspiration:* Rare.
- *Alternatives:* PDL, Intra-Osseous.
- *Signs & Symptoms:* Localized numbness, resistance during injection.
- *Safety Features:* Limited anaesthetic volume.
- *Precautions:* Aseptic technique crucial.
- *Failures:* Inaccurate placement.
- *Complications:* Bone trauma, discomfort.

Intra-Osseous Injection -

- *Technique:* Injection directly into cancellous bone using perforator.
- *Nerve Anesthetized:* Alveolar nerves near tooth apex.
- *Areas Anesthetized:* Individual tooth and surrounding tissues.
- *Indications:* Failure of other methods, Endodontics.
- *Contraindications:* Infection, lack of equipment.
- *Advantages:* Rapid onset, effective in inflamed tissue.
- *Disadvantages:* Equipment needed, short duration.
- *Alternatives:* PDL, Nerve Block.
- *Signs & Symptoms:* Immediate, profound anaesthesia.
- *Safety Features:* Localized effect.
- *Precautions:* Avoid damage to roots or nerves.
- *Failures:* Misplacement or clogged perforation.
- *Complications:* Post-op Discomfort, Root Damage.

Posterior Superior Alveolar Nerve Block -

- *Technique:* Needle inserted above maxillary tuberosity.
- *Nerve Anesthetized:* PSA Nerve.

- *Areas Anesthetized:* Maxillary molars (except MB root of 1st).
- *Indications:* Treatment involving maxillary molars.
- *Contraindications:* Bleeding Disorders (due to vascularity).
- *Advantages:* Anesthetizes multiple teeth with one injection.
- *Disadvantages:* Risk of Hematoma.
- *Positive Aspiration:* ~3%.
- *Alternatives:* Infiltration or MSA block.
- *Signs & Symptoms:* Numb molars, cheek.
- *Safety Features:* Aspirate before injecting.
- *Precautions:* Avoid over-insertion.
- *Failures:* Inadequate depth or incorrect angulation.
- *Complications:* Hematoma, Trismus.

Middle Superior Alveolar Nerve Block -

- *Technique:* Injection in muco-buccal fold above 2nd pre-molar.
- *Nerve Anesthetized:* MSA nerve.
- *Areas Anesthetized:* Premolars, MB root of 1st molar.
- *Indications:* Procedures on maxillary premolars.
- *Contraindications:* MSA nerve absent in some patients.
- *Advantages:* More localized than PSA.
- *Disadvantages:* Variable anatomy.
- *Positive Aspiration:* <3%.
- *Alternatives:* Infiltration, ASA block.
- *Signs & Symptoms:* Numb premolars, upper lip.
- *Safety Features:* Easily accessible site.
- *Precautions:* Confirm site before injecting.
- *Failures:* Anatomical variation.
- *Complications:* Minor swelling.

Anterior Superior Nerve Block -

- *Technique:* Injection at height of muco-buccal fold above canine.
- *Nerve Anesthetized:* ASA nerve.
- *Areas Anesthetized:* Canine, lateral and central incisor.
- *Indications:* Anterior maxillary dental procedures.
- *Contraindications:* Local infection.
- *Advantages:* Easy access, minimal complications.

- *Disadvantages:* Small coverage.
- *Positive Aspiration:* <1%.
- *Alternatives:* Infiltration or AMSA block.
- *Signs & Symptoms:* Numb anterior teeth and lip.
- *Safety Features:* Minimal soft tissue trauma.
- *Precautions:* Avoid injecting too superiorly.
- *Failures:* Anatomical variation.
- *Complications:* Minor swelling.

Maxillary Nerve Block -

- *Technique:* High tuberosity or greater palatine canal approach.
- *Nerve Anesthetized:* Entire maxillary nerve (V2).
- *Areas Anesthetized:* Hemi-maxilla (teeth, palate and soft tissue).
- *Indications:* Extensive maxillary procedures.
- *Contraindications:* Untrained practitioners.
- *Advantages:* Broad anaesthesia.
- *Disadvantages:* Technically demanding.
- *Positive Aspiration:* Moderate risk.
- *Alternatives:* Multiple infiltrations or blocks.
- *Signs & Symptoms:* Total upper quadrant numbness.
- *Safety Features:* Deep anatomical knowledge required.
- *Precautions:* Use advanced technique carefully.
- *Failures:* Inadequate depth or needle misdirection.
- *Complications:* Hematoma, Diplopia.

Greater Palatine Nerve Block -

- *Technique:* Injection anterior to greater palatine foramen.
- *Nerve Anesthetized:* Greater palatine nerve.
- *Areas Anesthetized:* Posterior hard palate and overlying tissues.
- *Indications:* Periodontal or surgical procedures.
- *Contraindications:* Acute infection.
- *Advantages:* Broad palatal anaesthesia.
- *Disadvantages:* Slight discomfort.
- *Positive Aspiration:* <1%.
- *Alternatives:* AMSA Block.
- *Signs and Symptoms:* Numb posterior palate.

- *Safety Features:* Easily accessible site.
- *Precautions:* Inject slowly to reduce pain.
- *Failures:* Inaccurate location.
- *Complications:* Palatal ulceration.

Nasopalatine Nerve Block -

- *Technique:* Injection near incisive foramen.
- *Nerve Anesthetized:* Nasopalatine nerve.
- *Areas Anesthetized:* Anterior hard palate.
- *Indications:* Anterior palatal procedures.
- *Contraindications:* Inflammation or ulcers.
- *Advantages:* Effective for anterior palatal region.
- *Disadvantages:* Painful due to tight tissue.
- *Positive Aspiration:* <1%.
- *Alternatives:* AMSA Block.
- *Signs and Symptoms:* Numb central palatal area.
- *Safety Features:* Minimal systemic risk.
- *Precautions:* Slow injection.
- *Failures:* Improper location.
- *Complications:* Persistent soreness.

Anterior Middle Superior Nerve Block -

- *Technique:* Injection midway between midline and free gingival margin on palate.
- *Nerve Anesthetized:* ASA and MSA branches via sub neural plexus.
- *Areas Anesthetized:* Incisors to premolars and palatal tissue.
- *Indications:* Cosmetic/restorative procedures.
- *Contraindications:* Dense palatal bone.
- *Advantages:* Broad field with single injection.
- *Disadvantages:* May not anesthetize buccal tissues.
- *Positive Aspiration:* <1%.
- *Alternatives:* Multiple infiltrations.
- *Signs and Symptoms:* Numb anterior palate and teeth.
- *Safety Features:* Minimal volume.
- *Precautions:* Precise placement.
- *Failures:* Improper technique.

- *Complications:* Palatal ischemia.

Palatal Approach Superior Alveolar Nerve Block -

- *Technique:* Injection near incisive canal via palatal route.
- *Nerve Anesthetized:* ASA nerve.
- *Areas Anesthetized:* Maxillary anterior teeth, palatal tissues.
- *Indications:* Restorative or cosmetic work in anterior region.
- *Contraindications:* Uncooperative patients.
- *Advantages:* Palatal and dental anaesthesia in one shot.
- *Disadvantages:* Technique sensitive.
- *Positive Aspiration:* Rare.
- *Alternatives:* ASA block, Naso-Palatine Block.
- *Signs and Symptoms:* Palatal and incisor numbness.
- *Safety Features:* Localized effect.
- *Precautions:* Use topical first.
- *Failures:* Incorrect insertion angle.
- *Complications:* Tissue trauma, ischemia.

Mandibular Techniques

Inferior Alveolar Nerve Block -

- *Technique:* Insert needle lateral to pterygomandibular raphe, near mandibular foramen.
- *Nerve Anesthetized:* Inferior alveolar, lingual, and often mental nerves.
- *Areas Anesthetized:* Mandibular teeth to midline, lower lip, chin, and tongue on one side.
- *Indications:* Dental procedures on multiple mandibular teeth.
- *Contraindications:* Acute infection at injection site.
- *Advantages:* Broad coverage from single injection.
- *Disadvantages:* High failure rate due to anatomical variation.
- *Positive Aspiration:* ~10-15%.
- *Alternatives:* Gow-Gates, Akinosi block, Mental nerve block.
- *Signs & Symptoms:* Numb lip, chin, tongue on affected side.
- *Safety Features:* Standardized landmarks.
- *Precautions:* Avoid rapid injection to reduce trismus.
- *Failures:* Poor technique or accessory innervation.

- *Complications:* Hematoma, trismus, transient facial paralysis.

Buccal Nerve Block -

- *Technique:* Injection into mucosa distal and buccal to last mandibular molar.
- *Nerve Anesthetized:* Long buccal nerve.
- *Areas Anesthetized:* Buccal gingiva of mandibular molars.
- *Indications:* Procedures on buccal soft tissue.
- *Contraindications:* Infection at site.
- *Advantages:* Quick and simple.
- *Disadvantages:* No pulpal effect.
- *Positive Aspiration:* Rare.
- *Alternatives:* Local infiltration.
- *Signs & Symptoms:* Numb buccal mucosa.
- *Safety Features:* Superficial injection.
- *Precautions:* Avoid excessive depth.
- *Failures:* Missed nerve due to incorrect placement.
- *Complications:* Minor bleeding or discomfort.

Gow-Gates Mandibular Nerve Block Technique -

- *Technique:* Insert needle near neck of mandibular condyle, target lateral condylar neck.
- *Nerve Anesthetized:* Mandibular nerve (V3) trunk.
- *Areas Anesthetized:* Entire V3 distribution — mandibular teeth, buccal mucosa, tongue, and lower lip.
- *Indications:* When IANB fails or multiple quadrant anaesthesia needed.
- *Contraindications:* Limited mouth opening.
- *Advantages:* High success, wide area covered.
- *Disadvantages:* Slower onset, technique sensitive.
- *Positive Aspiration:* ~2%.
- *Alternatives:* IANB, Akinosi block.
- *Signs & Symptoms:* Numb tongue, teeth, and lower facial structures.
- *Safety Features:* Fewer intravascular injections.
- *Precautions:* Ensure full mouth opening for proper access.
- *Failures:* Incorrect angulation or depth.
- *Complications:* Temporary Paralysis, Hematoma.

Vazirani – Akinosi Closed Mouth Mandibular Nerve Block -

- *Technique:* Needle inserted medial to ramus, closed mouth, parallel to max occlusal plane.
- *Nerve Anesthetized:* Mandibular nerve branches including IAN, Lingual and Mylohyoid.
- *Areas Anesthetized:* Mandibular teeth, lingual soft tissue, lower lip.
- *Indications:* Trismus or limited mouth opening.
- *Contraindications:* Inability to visualize landmarks.
- *Advantages:* Useful in trismus cases.
- *Disadvantages:* No bony contact, difficult to gauge depth.
- *Positive Aspiration:* ~5-10%.
- *Alternatives:* Gow-Gates, IANB.
- *Signs & Symptoms:* Lip and tongue numbness.
- *Safety Features:* Medial and parallel approach limits trauma.
- *Precautions:* Advance slowly and aspirate frequently.
- *Failures:* Improper angulation.
- *Complications:* Hematoma, Transient Paralysis.

Mental Nerve Block -

- *Technique:* Injection at mental foramen (usually near 1st or 2nd premolar).
- *Nerve Anesthetized:* Mental nerve.
- *Areas Anesthetized:* Chin, lower lip, facial gingiva anterior to mental foramen.
- *Indications:* Soft tissue procedures in anterior mandible.
- *Contraindications:* Infection near mental foramen.
- *Advantages:* Simple and localized.
- *Disadvantages:* No pulpal anaesthesia.
- *Positive Aspiration:* ~5-7%.
- *Alternatives:* Incisive nerve block or IANB.
- *Signs & Symptoms:* Numb chin and lower lip.
- *Safety Features:* Easily palpable landmark.
- *Precautions:* Avoid nerve damage.
- *Failures:* Poor localization of foramen.

- *Complications:* Hematoma, Nerve Injury.

Incisive Nerve Block -

- *Technique:* Same as Mental Nerve Block, with firm pressure over foramen to direct solution into canal.
- *Nerve Anesthetized:* Incisive branch of IAN.
- *Areas Anesthetized:* Mandibular anterior teeth, premolars, soft tissues.
- *Indications:* Pulpal anaesthesia of anterior teeth without full IANB.
- *Contraindications:* Infection or difficult access.
- *Advantages:* Avoids lingual or full mandibular anaesthesia.
- *Disadvantages:* May miss lingual tissues.
- *Positive Aspiration:* ~5-6%.
- *Alternatives:* IANB.
- *Signs & Symptoms:* Lip numbness and anterior teeth sensitivity loss.
- *Safety Features:* Minimal tissue trauma.
- *Precautions:* Maintain pressure post-injection.
- *Failures:* Inadequate diffusion.
- *Complications:* Hematoma, discomfort.

Management of Anaesthetic Complications

Complication	Introduction	Causes	Problem	Prevention	Management
Local Complications					
Needle Breakage	Needle breaks during injection	Sudden movement, bending needle, inserting to hub	Retained fragment, pain, surgery needed	Don't bend needle, use proper length, don't insert to hub	Attempt retrieval, refer if not visible
Pain on Injection	Discomfort during anaesthetic delivery	Rapid injection, dull needle, poor technique	Patient anxiety, fear of procedures	Use sharp needles, topical anaesthetic, inject slowly	Reassure patient
Burning Sensation	Stinging sensation during injection	Acidic pH, rapid injection, contamination	Tissue irritation, discomfort	Warm solution, slow injection	Self-limiting, symptomatic relief

DENTAL EXTRACTION: MULTI-DISCIPLINARY PERSPECTIVES

Hematoma	Swelling due to blood vessel injury	Needle puncture (PSA/IAB)	Bruising, swelling, pain	Gentle technique, anatomical knowledge	Pressure, cold compress (24 hrs.), then warm compress
Trismus	Limited mouth opening due to trauma	Muscle injury, multiple injections, haemorrhage	Jaw pain, difficulty speaking/eating	Minimal penetrations, careful technique	Heat, analgesics, exercises
Infection	Infection at injection site	Contamination, poor aseptic technique	Swelling, pain, abscess	Sterile technique, clean equipment	Antibiotics, drainage if needed
Edema	Swelling of soft tissue	Trauma, allergy, infection	Discomfort, rare airway risk	Accurate technique, allergy check	Cold compress, antihistamines/corticosteroids
Soft Tissue Injury	Biting of numb areas post-injection	Loss of sensation, especially in children	Ulcers, swelling, infection risk	Educate patient/caregiver, short-acting anaesthetic in kids	Analgesics, saline rinse, monitor
Sloughing of Tissue	Ulceration or necrosis of mucosa	Ischemia from vasoconstrictor, prolonged topical use	Pain, delayed healing	Avoid high vasoconstrictor, limit topical time	Analgesics, antiseptic rinses
Systemic Complications					
Overdose (Toxicity)	Toxic reaction due to high anaesthetic level	Intravascular injection, excess dose, rapid absorption	Seizures, CNS/cardiac collapse	Aspirate, slow injection, proper dosing	Stop injection, ABCs, manage seizures, call emergency

Allergic Reaction	Hypersensitivity to anaesthetic or preservatives	Allergy to bisulfite, methylparaben	Rash, swelling, anaphylaxis	Allergy history, preservative-free options	Antihistamines (mild), epinephrine/O2/EMS (severe)
Syncope	Fainting due to reduced brain blood flow	Anxiety, pain, upright positioning	Loss of consciousness, fall risk	Reassure, recline chair	Supine position, elevate legs, airway, oxygen
Hyperventilation	Increased breathing rate due to anxiety	Emotional stress, panic	Dizziness, tingling, spasms	Reassure patient	Slow breathing, paper bag rebreathing if needed
Psychogenic Reaction	Anxiety-related symptoms not from drug effect	Fear of injection/dentistry	Palpitations, nausea, syncope risk	Calm environment, sedation if needed	Monitor, reassure, supportive care

Special Considerations of Dental Anaesthesia

Patient-Related Factors:-

1. **Medical History:** A thorough review of the patient's medical history is crucial. This includes any systemic diseases (*cardiovascular, respiratory, endocrine, hepatic, renal, neurological, etc.*), allergies, current medications (*including over-the-counter drugs and supplements*), and previous adverse reactions to anaesthesia. Certain conditions might necessitate adjustments in the type or dosage of anaesthetic used, or even contraindicate certain techniques. For instance, patients with cardiovascular disease may require limiting the epinephrine content in local anaesthetics.
2. **Paediatric Patients:** Aesthetic dosages must be carefully calculated based on weight, and the choice of anaesthetic and technique should prioritize safety and minimize psychological trauma. Behaviour management techniques and sometimes sedation may be necessary.

3. **Geriatric Patients:** Elderly patients often have multiple co-morbidities and physiological changes that can affect their response to anaesthesia. Reduced organ function can impact drug metabolism and elimination, while *cardiovascular* and *respiratory* conditions increase the risk of complications. Lower doses of anaesthetics may be required, and careful monitoring during and after the procedure is essential. Postoperative *cognitive dysfunction* and *delirium* are also concerns in this population.
4. **Psychological Status:** Anxiety and fear of dental procedures are common and can influence the choice of anaesthesia. Mild sedation techniques like *nitrous oxide* or *oral sedatives* might be sufficient for anxious patients undergoing minor procedures, while *deeper sedation* or *general anaesthesia* may be necessary for highly phobic individuals or for extensive treatments.
5. **Physical Condition:** Factors like *obesity*, *pregnancy* or *physical disabilities* can influence the administration and effects of anaesthesia. Obese patients may have airway management challenges, while pregnant patients require consideration of the potential effects of anaesthetics on the foetus.
6. **Allergies:** Documented allergies to local anaesthetics or other medications used in conjunction with anaesthesia (*e.g., latex, preservatives*) must be carefully noted and alternative agents used.
7. **Current Medications:** Drug interactions are a significant concern. For example, patients taking *anticoagulants* may have an increased risk of bleeding at the injection site, while certain medications can potentiate or interfere with the effects of anaesthetics.

Procedure-Related Factors:-

1. **Type and Duration of Procedure:** The extent and length of the dental treatment will dictate the type and duration of anaesthesia required. Simple fillings may only need local anaesthesia, while complex surgical procedures might necessitate sedation or general anaesthesia.
2. **Location of Treatment:** The area of the mouth being treated influences the choice of local anaesthesia technique (*e.g., infiltration vs. nerve block*).
3. **Need for Haemostasis:** Some procedures require *vasoconstrictors* like epinephrine to reduce bleeding. The use and dosage of these agents must

be carefully considered, especially in patients with cardiovascular and other limiting conditions.

4. ***Pain Level Expected:*** Procedures anticipated to be more painful may require stronger or longer-acting anaesthetics.

Anaesthetic Agent and Technique-Related Factors:-

1. ***Type of Anaesthetic:*** Local anaesthetics vary in their *potency, duration of action and potential for adverse effects*. The selection should be based on the patient's needs and medical history, as well as the requirements of the procedure.
2. ***Dosage:*** Accurate dosage calculation based on patient weight (*especially in children*) and individual factors is crucial to avoid toxicity. Maximum recommended doses for each anaesthetic agent must be strictly adhered to.
3. ***Route of Administration:*** Local anaesthesia is typically administered via injection, but topical anaesthetics are also used for *superficial anaesthesia*. Sedation can be achieved through *inhalation* (nitrous oxide), *oral, intravenous, or intramuscular* routes. General anaesthesia is usually administered *intravenously* or via *inhalation*.
4. ***Injection Technique:*** Proper injection technique is essential to achieve effective anaesthesia, minimize discomfort and avoid complications like *nerve damage* or *hematoma*. Aspiration before injection is crucial to prevent intravascular injection of local anaesthetic.
5. ***Use of Vasoconstrictors:*** *Epinephrine* is commonly added to local anaesthetics to prolong their duration and reduce bleeding. However, its use must be carefully considered in patients with certain medical conditions.
6. ***Monitoring:*** The level of monitoring required depends on the type of anaesthesia administered. Local anaesthesia usually requires basic observation, while sedation and general anaesthesia necessitate continuous monitoring of vital signs (*heart rate, blood pressure, oxygen saturation & respiratory rate*).

Facility and Personnel-Related Factors:-

1. ***Equipment and Supplies:*** The dental office must be equipped with the necessary equipment for administering anaesthesia and managing

potential complications, including *emergency medications* and *resuscitation equipment*.

2. **Personnel Training:** Dentists and their staff must be properly trained in the administration of the chosen anaesthetic technique, patient monitoring, and the *management of medical emergencies*. For deeper levels of sedation and general anaesthesia, specialized training and personnel (*e.g., anaesthesiologists*) are often required.
3. **Recovery:** Adequate *recovery time* and appropriate *post-operative instructions* are essential for patient safety and comfort.

Ethical Considerations of Dental Anaesthesia

1. *Informed Consent*

- Patients must be fully informed about the anaesthesia options, risks, benefits, and alternatives.
- Consent must be voluntary and given by someone who is competent to decide.

2. *Patient Autonomy*

- Respecting the patient's right to refuse or choose a particular form of anaesthesia.

3. *Non-Maleficence ("Do No Harm")*

- Anaesthetics must be administered safely, minimizing risk and avoiding harm to the patient.

4. *Beneficence*

- Dentists must act in the patient's best interest, selecting appropriate anaesthetic techniques to ensure comfort and safety.

5. *Confidentiality*

- Patient information related to medical history, allergies, and reactions to anaesthesia must be kept confidential.

6. *Competence and Continuing Education*

- Dental professionals must stay current with anaesthesia guidelines, techniques, and emergency management.

7. *Emergency Preparedness*

- Ethical duty to be prepared for and capable of managing anaesthesia-related emergencies (*e.g., allergic reactions, overdose, cardiac arrest*).

Legal Considerations of Dental Anaesthesia

1. ***Licensing and Accreditation*** - Practitioners must be licensed and comply with jurisdictional requirements for administering different levels of anaesthesia (local, sedation, general).
2. ***Scope of Practice*** - Dentists must not exceed the legal limits of their training and certification in anaesthesia administration.
3. ***Documentation*** - Accurate and thorough records must be maintained, including consent forms, dosage, time of administration, patient vitals, and monitoring logs.
4. ***Regulations and Guidelines*** - Adherence to national/state laws and professional guidelines (*e.g., American Dental Association, Dental Board regulations*).
5. ***Liability and Malpractice*** - In cases of negligence, improper administration or failure to manage complications, dentists may face legal consequences or lawsuits.
6. ***Facility Requirements*** - Dental offices must meet legal standards for equipment, monitoring devices and emergency preparedness when offering sedation or general anaesthesia.
7. ***Reporting Adverse Events*** - Some jurisdictions mandate reporting of serious anaesthesia-related incidents to regulatory bodies.

Future trends of Dental Anaesthesia

1. ***Advanced Local Anaesthetic Formulations*** - Innovations are leading to the development of anaesthetics that offer faster onset, longer duration and reduced side effects. These advancements aim to improve patient experiences and outcomes during dental procedures.
2. ***Digital and Computer-Controlled Delivery Systems*** - The integration of digital technologies, such as *computer-controlled local anaesthetic delivery (CCLAD) systems*, allows for precise administration of anaesthesia. These systems enhance accuracy, minimize discomfort, and reduce the risk of over dosage.
3. ***Needle-Free and Minimally Invasive Techniques*** - Emerging methods, including *needle-free systems and laser-assisted anaesthesia*, are gaining traction. These techniques aim to reduce patient anxiety and discomfort associated with traditional needle injections.

4. ***Personalized Anaesthesia Approaches*** - Advancements in *genomics* and *patient data analysis* are paving the way for personalized anaesthesia plans. *Tailoring anaesthetic choices based on individual genetic profiles* can enhance efficacy and reduce adverse reactions.
5. ***Integration with Artificial Intelligence (AI)*** - AI is being utilized to optimize anaesthesia delivery by analysing *patient data*, predicting responses and assisting in *decision-making processes*. This integration aims to improve safety and efficiency in anaesthetic administration.
6. ***Expansion in Emerging Markets*** - The dental anaesthesia market is experiencing growth in emerging economies, particularly in *Asia-Pacific* and *Africa*. Factors such as increasing urbanization and rising disposable incomes are driving demand for dental anaesthesia products in these regions.

Post-Operative Pain Management and Recovery

- Postoperative pain is a common part of recovery after surgery or dental work, resulting from tissue trauma and the body's inflammatory response. Effective pain management is vital for patient comfort, faster recovery and avoiding complications like chronic pain that usually arises suddenly and is directly linked to the extent of the surgical procedure. It varies from mild discomfort to severe pain, depending on factors like the *invasiveness of the surgery/procedure* and *individual pain thresholds*.
- Local anaesthesia, using medications like *Lidocaine* and *Bupivacaine*, plays a key role in pain control by blocking pain signals during and after the procedure. The effectiveness can vary based on the specific anaesthetic used and how it's delivered to the target area.
- For ongoing pain relief, medications like *NSAID's* (e.g., *ibuprofen*) are commonly prescribed, while *Acetaminophen* may be used for those unable to take *NSAID's*. In cases of significant pain, *Opioids* like *codeine* are available but are used cautiously due to potential side effects.
- Pre-emptive analgesia - administering pain relief before surgery - can help reduce intensity postoperatively.
- Non-pharmacologic methods such as *cold therapy* and *rest*, combined with patient education on postoperative care, are also important for minimizing discomfort and supporting recovery.

BIBLIOGRAPHY:

1. Malamed SF, Handbook of Local Anaesthesia. 7th ed. St. Louis: Elsevier; 2020.
2. Haas DA, An update on local anaesthetics in dentistry. *J Can Dent Assoc.* 2002; 68(9):546-51.
3. Becker DE, Reed KL, Local anaesthetics: Review of pharmacological considerations. *Anesth Prog.* 2012; 59(2):90-101.
4. Meechan JG, How to overcome failed local anaesthesia. *Br Dent J.* 2011; 210(8):339-43.
5. Brown RS, Rhodus NL, Epinephrine and local anaesthesia revisited. *Oral Surg Oral Med Oral Pathol Oral Radiol Endod.* 2005; 100(4):401-8.
6. Kehlet H, Dahl JB, The value of "multimodal" or "balanced analgesia" in postoperative pain treatment. *Anesth Analg.* 1993; 77(5):1048-56.
7. Gan TJ, Poorly controlled postoperative pain: prevalence, consequences, and prevention. *J Pain Res.* 2017; 10:2287-98.
8. Moore PA, Hersh EV. Local anaesthetics: pharmacology and toxicity. *Dent Clin North Am.* 2010; 54(4):587-99.
9. Ong CK, Lirk P, Seymour RA, Jenkins BJ, The efficacy of pre-emptive analgesia for acute postoperative pain management: a meta-analysis. *Anesth Analg.* 2005; 100(3):757-73.
10. Chou R, Gordon DB, de Leon-Casasola OA, et al. Management of Postoperative Pain: A Clinical Practice Guideline. *J Pain.* 2016; 17(2):131-57.
11. Dahl JB, Moiniche S, Pre-emptive analgesia. *Br Med Bull.* 2004; 71(1):13-27.
12. Apfelbaum JL, Chen C, Mehta SS, Gan TJ, Post-operative pain experience: results from a national survey suggest postoperative pain continues to be undermanaged. *Anesth Analg.* 2003; 97(2):534-40.
13. White PF, The role of non-pharmacologic therapies in pain management after ambulatory surgery. *Anesth Analg.* 2005; 100(6):1604-13.

CHAPTER 3

RADIOLOGICAL EVALUATION OF THE EXTRACTION SOCKET



Dr Saramma Mathew Fenn, MDS, Ph.D.

Associate Professor

Oral Medicine & Radiology

*Vinayaka Mission's Sankarachariyar
Dental College*

*Vinayaka Mission's Research Foundation
(Deemed To Be University)*

Salem, Tamil Nadu

- Scope of Radiology

- Radiology can assist dentists in both the *planning* and in the *post-operative* stages of dental extractions. Although radiographs primarily show the hard tissues, they also provide shadow of the soft tissues surrounding bone structures.
- Soft tissue outlines the position of vital landmarks and subtle pathological changes can often be inferred, aiding *clinical decision-making before and after extraction*. This has become even more evident with the advent of *digital imaging* and high-resolution images can now be captured and analysed directly on-screen, allowing for a more precise evaluation.
- ***Pre-operative radiographic assessment*** of tooth helps the clinician understand the morphology of the tooth, the level and density of alveolar bone, and the location of adjacent anatomical structures such as the *inferior alveolar nerve* or the *maxillary sinus*. Identifying these features is critical for minimizing the risk of complications during

extraction. Radiographs are also useful for detecting *peri-apical pathology*, *bone loss*, or *unusual root anatomy*, which may influence the surgical approach.

- **Post-extraction**, radiographs are not routinely required in all cases but are valuable when *healing appears delayed*, when there is *suspicion of retained root fragments*, or if complications such as *sinus perforation* or *alveolar osteitis* are suspected.
- Radiographic follow-up is also important in planning additional procedures such as *socket preservation* or *dental implant placement*. In cases involving *cysts* or *tumours*, imaging supports the monitoring of *bone healing* and *tissue response* over time.
- This chapter will cover the most suitable imaging options for dental extractions, without going into the technical details of radiograph taking. It will also look at the *important landmarks to be aware of* and the *key points to check on a radiograph*—both before and after an extraction to keep the content practical and relevant for general dental practitioners.

Radiological infrastructure

- In the past, dental radiographs were limited to *two-dimensional film-based* images, which were often held up to a light source for interpretation. These images had limitations in terms of clarity and depth.
- Modern imaging technologies, including *digital radiographs* and *cone-beam computed tomography (CBCT)*, have significantly enhanced diagnostic capabilities. With *three-dimensional imaging*, clinicians can view anatomical structures in multiple planes, magnify regions of interest, and plan procedures with greater accuracy.
- **These advancements have notably improved the planning and execution of dental extractions**, particularly in complex cases. *Post-operative monitoring* is also more reliable, as bone healing in the extraction socket (completed within four to six months) can be evaluated radiographically.
- Digital imaging has further expanded the scope of *treatment planning*. In *implant dentistry*, for example, bone height, width, and density can be measured, and the optimal implant position can be visualized and adjusted virtually before placement. *Radiology also*

supports other specialties; in paediatric dentistry, it is used to monitor the eruption of permanent teeth and assess developmental disturbances.

Types of Radiography

- The choice of radiograph is guided by the *clinical scenario, case complexity, and anatomical considerations.*
- Intra-oral imaging such as *peri-apical X-rays* and *RVG* provides detailed views of individual teeth and surrounding structures, while *panoramic radiographs (OPG)* offer a comprehensive overview for assessing multiple teeth, impactions, and jaw anatomy.

Table 1

Common types of radiographs with indications, advantages and disadvantages

TYPE	INDICATIONS	ADVANTAGES	DISADVANTAGES
Periapical X-ray (IOPA)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Evaluation of root morphology, ▪ periapical pathology, ▪ localized dental issues 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ High-resolution detail of tooth and surrounding bone; ▪ low radiation 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Limited field of view; ▪ not suitable for assessing multiple teeth or wider areas
Radiovisiography (RVG)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Real-time intraoral imaging for diagnosis, ▪ root analysis, ▪ extraction site evaluation 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Instant image display; ▪ reduced radiation dose; ▪ digital storage and enhancement 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Requires costly equipment; ▪ small field of view; ▪ image quality depends on technique
Panoramic X-ray (OPG)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Assessment of multiple teeth, jawbone, impacted teeth, and anatomical relationships 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Covers entire jaw in one image; ▪ fast and non-invasive 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Lower image clarity; ▪ geometric distortion; ▪ less detail than intraoral films
Cone Beam CT (CBCT)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Complex cases—impacted teeth, ▪ proximity to sinus or nerve, ▪ pre-surgical planning 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ 3D imaging; ▪ accurate spatial analysis; ▪ excellent for treatment planning 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Higher radiation dose; ▪ expensive; ▪ not always available

Roles of Radiography

1. *Assessing Root Anatomy and Number of Roots -*

- Radiographs provide prior insights into *the number, shape, curvature, and position of roots, which can be effective for extraction planning*. Since tooth anatomy often differs from standard textbook descriptions, recognizing variations like root curvature beforehand allows the clinician to adjust technique (*such as applying controlled, additional force*) to ensure a smooth and atraumatic extraction. The suitable radiograph also helps anticipate potential complications, enabling the dentist to plan appropriate management strategies or schedule more complex cases during morning hours. Common anomalies like *dilacerations* or *supernumerary roots*, which can increase procedural difficulty, are readily detected on a *routine pre-extraction X-ray*.

2. *Determining Proximity to Anatomical Structures -*

- Another important application of imaging is to *evaluate the proximity of tooth roots to critical anatomical structures such as the inferior alveolar nerve, mental foramen, or maxillary sinus*. Although soft tissues like nerves are not directly visible on radiographs, the bony canals housing them can be identified, helping to avoid potential *nerve injury*. A common example is the close relationship between the root apices of maxillary molars and the floor of the maxillary sinus. Excessive apical force during extraction may rupture the sinus floor, complicating healing and necessitating additional surgical intervention—particularly if a dental implant is planned. Such scenarios also carry a higher risk of post-operative infection.

3. *Identifying Periapical Lesions, Cysts, or Other Pathologies -*

- There have been instances where *odontogenic cysts and tumours* were incidentally discovered on routine radiographs taken for aesthetic orthodontic or restorative treatments. Conditions such as *odontogenic keratocysts* often grow in an antero-posterior direction rather than bucco-lingually, making them less likely to produce noticeable swelling. Additionally, when these cysts or tumours are small, they rarely present with clinical symptoms,

making radiographs essential for early detection. Identifying such pathologies prior to extraction allows for appropriate surgical planning or timely referral.

4. Planning for Surgical or Complicated Extractions -

- The most ideal situations for utilizing radiographs are cases where teeth are impacted or fractured. In such scenarios, *radiographs assist the dentist in detailed planning and decision-making regarding the surgical approach, flap design and sequence of procedures.* Radiographs are also valuable in determining the need for *bone removal, tooth sectioning, or bone grafting*, allowing for the procurement of necessary materials in advance. Furthermore, this enables the clinician to inform the patient about potential additional procedures, helping to manage expectations and avoid unnecessary alarm.

5. Confirming Complete Removal of the Tooth or Fragments -

- One of the common reasons for *post-extraction imaging* is to ensure that no root fragments, bone chips or broken instruments (though rare) remain within the socket, particularly following difficult or surgical extractions. These remnants can act as foreign bodies, triggering an immune response that may lead to inflammation. *This inflammation can manifest as either a chronic, longstanding reaction or an acute response resulting in an abscess, with the potential to spread to adjacent spaces and cause osteomyelitis.* Radiographs are useful in detecting such fragments, as they are *radiopaque* and often exhibit identifiable geometric shapes, making them relatively easy to locate.

6. Monitoring Bone Healing and Socket Integrity -

- *Follow-up radiographs* are other reason for radiograph, although not routine, but can *help assess bone regeneration and detect delayed healing, or infection.* These are especially in cases with a history of periapical infection or if the patient has an underlying systemic disease delaying healing.

7. Evaluating Sites for Potential Implant Placement -

- Radiographic evaluation is not only critical but an absolute necessity in *implant placement.* Radiographs help assess the

available bone height, width, and quality, which are directly correlated with the success of the implant and its *osseointegration* with the bone. Imaging also aids in identifying anatomical constraints, allowing the clinician to modify the type and placement of the implant accordingly, ensuring optimal compatibility between the implant and surrounding bone.

8. *Assessing Bone Density and Support -*

- One of the important parameters to be assessed in the specialties of *endodontics* and *prosthodontics*—particularly in *implantology*—is the alveolar and jaw bone density, as the prognosis of the remaining vital bone is critical for stability and for assessing the extent of damage. In severe infections or in patients with compromised immunity, such as those with *diabetes*, healing and bone prognosis can be adversely affected. Therefore, a proper radiological assessment is vital. *Radiographic images help determine bone quality and density around the tooth to be extracted, which in turn influences decisions regarding the extraction technique, socket preservation or the need for grafting.* This enables appropriate treatment planning and ensures the success and longevity of the implants.

9. *Determining if the Tooth is Fully Erupted with Accessible Roots -*

- Unerupted teeth can be visualized effectively using appropriate radiographs, especially with modern imaging modalities such as *CBCT*. This aids dentists in planning extractions when indicated and allows for *conservative bone removal to preserve a healthy alveolar socket*. Radiographs also confirm whether a tooth is fully erupted and easily accessible and such teeth are generally suitable for simple (non-surgical) extraction. In *orthodontic* or *pedodontic* cases, preserving the integrity of the underlying permanent tooth is crucial to ensure proper eruption and alignment.

10. *Identifying Need for Surgical Extraction -*

- As mentioned before, when radiographs show *impaction, root fractures, ankylosis, or complex root anatomy*, surgical

extraction is indicated. This may involve bone removal or sectioning of the tooth.

11. Estimating the Complexity of the Extraction -

- One of the most useful applications of radiographs in extractions is their role in *assessing and planning surgical intervention*. Radiographic evaluation helps determine various factors prior to extraction, allowing clinicians to predict the *level of difficulty, the time required, and the potential need for surgical procedures*. This, in turn, supports effective case planning and facilitates informed consent.

Points to Remember

- Radiographs are essential pre- and post-operatively, helping in planning, evaluating bone morphology, detecting pathologies and monitoring healing after extraction.
- Modern imaging technologies like *CBCT* and *digital radiographs* offer high-resolution, 3D visualization of hard tissues and soft tissue outlines, enabling accurate diagnosis and treatment planning.
- ***Pre-operative imaging aids in evaluating:*** Root morphology and number, alveolar bone level and density, proximity to vital structures and finally presence of periapical lesions, cysts or unusual root anatomy.
- ***Postoperative imaging*** is useful when healing is delayed, complications are suspected, or further treatment like implants is planned.
- Radiographs guide the ***selection of extraction technique*** based on anatomical and pathological findings.
- CBCT and OPG are valuable for *complex cases*, while periapical X-rays and RVG offer high detail for *localized evaluation*.
- Radiographs detect *retained fragments* (roots, bone chips), which may cause inflammation or infection if left untreated.
- Imaging supports ***socket preservation and implant planning*** by assessing bone quantity and quality, guiding implant position and predicting outcomes.

- In *Pedodontic* and *Orthodontic* specialty, radiology ensures proper eruption of permanent teeth by monitoring development and guiding conservative management.
- Radiographs help estimate extraction difficulty, time, and surgical needs supporting *informed consent* and *strategic case scheduling*.

CHAPTER 4

PATHOLOGICAL CONSIDERATIONS IN DENTAL EXTRACTION



Dr Mathew Jacob, MDS, Ph.D.

Professor

Oral Pathology & Microbiology

*Vinayaka Mission's Sankarachariyar
Dental College*

*Vinayaka Mission's Research Foundation
(Deemed To Be University)*

Salem, Tamil Nadu

-
- Dental extractions are often performed due to pathological reasons. These include *severe caries, periodontal disease, non-restorable fractures or periapical pathology* that compromises the tooth beyond repair. With advancements in *modern materials, diagnostic tools, endodontic techniques and periapical surgical procedures*, the necessity for extraction has significantly decreased. Today, many cases that would have once required extraction can be treated conservatively.
 - As a result, *extractions are now more often influenced by financial considerations or patient preferences rather than strict clinical necessity* unless the tooth is functionally compromised or cannot be restored prosthetically or restoratively.
 - Following an extraction, several *post-extraction changes and healing processes* take place. Modern *regenerative techniques*, including the use of *bone grafts and biomaterials*, can promote healthy wound healing and facilitate the rehabilitation of hard tissues. This allows not only for the removal of the microbial source of infection but also

for the potential future placement of prosthetic restorations, such as dental implants.

Traditional Indications and Healing in Dental Extractions

- This chapter focuses on traditional or ideal scenarios where dental extractions are performed based on *well-established clinical indications* such as grossly decayed or structurally compromised teeth that are deemed non-restorable.
- Other indications include *impacted teeth with follicular involvement* that carry the potential for *cystic transformation*, supernumerary teeth, teeth located in a fracture line, and those associated with pathological lesions. These are considered extreme clinical situations where delaying extraction may hinder or complicate overall treatment planning and management.
- In these cases, extraction is a *necessity rather than a choice*, and the healing of the socket typically follows the *physiological principles of wound healing* seen in other tissues.
- *The alveolar bone serves a unique function*: it supports the tooth. Once the tooth is removed, the absence of mechanical stimulation leads to a reduction in alveolar bone volume over time—a process known as ***alveolar atrophy***. This resorption can result in both hard and soft tissue changes that may compromise the *aesthetic and functional outcome of future prosthetic or implant-based restorations*.
- The *post-extraction tissue architecture*, especially the integrity of the surrounding bone and gingiva, plays a crucial role in determining the success of subsequent dental implant placement.

Histological Aspects of Healing -

- Tooth extraction initiates a *complex cascade of histologic and biochemical events*. It is inherently a traumatic procedure, even in controlled, atraumatic extractions. When pathology is confined solely to the tooth and the surrounding alveolar structures remain unaffected, the healing process is more straightforward.
- In such cases:
 - **Soft tissue healing** typically occurs within 3–4 weeks.

- **Bone remodelling** may take between 3–6 months, varying with the patient's age, general health and the location of the extraction site.
- However, when the **periodontal ligament (PDL)** is involved and the pathology extends into the alveolar bone, healing becomes more complicated and delayed. This is due to the destruction of supporting bone, which requires more extensive *remodelling and repair* before returning to a stable state.

Phases in Healing Socket

- The post-extraction healing of an alveolar socket is a complex and highly regulated biological process involving both soft and hard tissue regeneration.
- The primary cells in each phase with its functions are given in *Table 1*.

Table 1
Cell and Function in Phases of Healing

Phase	Cells	Functions
Haemostasis	Platelets	Clot formation, release of growth factors
Inflammation	Neutrophils, Macrophages, Lymphocytes	Debridement, immune response
Granulation	Fibroblasts, Endothelial Cells, Epithelial Cells	ECM formation, angiogenesis, soft tissue repair
Proliferation	Osteoprogenitor cells, Osteoblasts	Bone formation (osteoid)
Remodelling	Osteoclasts, Osteoblasts	Bone turnover and maturation

- It progresses through a series of overlapping but distinct stages, typically extending over several weeks to months.
- 1. **Haemostasis and Initial Clot Formation (Day 0–2):**
- Immediately following tooth extraction, the primary response is *haemostasis*. Blood fills the socket, and a clot forms, primarily

composed of *fibrin, platelets, and red blood cells*. This clot not only prevents further bleeding but also serves as a *provisional matrix* for the migration of *inflammatory and reparative* cells. The clot also plays a critical *protective role*, sealing the socket and preventing microbial invasion or mechanical disruption of the exposed alveolar bone and neurovascular structures.

2. *Inflammatory Phase (Days 1–3):*

- The inflammatory phase begins shortly after clot formation and is marked by the *infiltration of neutrophils, followed by macrophages and lymphocytes*. These immune cells work to *debride the wound, phagocytose necrotic tissue and bacteria*, and release *pro-inflammatory cytokines and growth factors such as interleukins, tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF- α), and vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF)*. Clinically, this phase may correspond with *mild edema, erythema and discomfort around the extraction site*.

3. *Granulation Tissue Formation (Days 3–7):*

- As inflammation subsides, *fibroblasts and endothelial cells* proliferate within the clot, replacing it with *granulation tissue rich in extracellular matrix components and newly formed capillaries*. This ***neovascularization*** is essential for delivering nutrients and oxygen to support continued cellular activity. The epithelial margins of the wound also begin to migrate over the granulation tissue during this period, contributing to soft tissue closure.

4. *Proliferative Phase (1–4 weeks):*

- The granulation tissue gradually undergoes *maturation*, and *osteoprogenitor cells* derived from *the periodontal ligament, endosteum, and bone marrow* begin to differentiate into *osteoblasts*. These osteoblasts initiate the *deposition of osteoid*, which subsequently *mineralizes* to form immature woven bone. This early bone fills the socket *centripetally*, progressing from the walls toward the centre. Alongside, soft tissue healing advances with the *re-epithelialization of the gingival margin*.

5. *Bone Remodelling Phase (4 weeks to several months):*

- Over the following months, the woven bone is gradually *remodelled* into mature lamellar bone through coordinated activity of *osteoclasts* and *osteoblasts*. This remodelling process restores the normal architecture and mechanical integrity of the alveolar bone. However,

it is accompanied by varying degrees of alveolar ridge resorption, particularly on the buccal aspect, which may impact *future prosthetic or implant rehabilitation*. Complete bony remodelling may require 3–6 months, though the exact duration depends on several factors including the patient's age, systemic health, socket location (maxilla vs. mandible), presence of infection and post-extraction management.

- Since this chapter looks at the histopathology of the extraction socket, ***connecting it to the clinical changes seen during healing process*** would enable the reader to comprehend the phases.
- *Table 2* gives a summary of the correlation of histological and clinical appearance.

Table 2

Histological and visible Clinical Changes of the extraction socket

PHASE	HISTOLOGICAL APPEARANCE	CLINICAL APPEARANCE
Haemostasis	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Blood clot fills the socket - Platelets release growth factors (PDGF, TGF-β, VEGF) - Fibrin mesh forms as scaffold for healing 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Fresh extraction site - Red, soft clot visible - Mild bleeding or oozing possible
Inflammation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Influx of neutrophils, then macrophages and lymphocytes - Phagocytosis of debris and bacteria - Cytokine release begins tissue signalling 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Mild swelling, redness - Localized tenderness - No active bleeding if clot remains intact
Granulation Tissue Formation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Clot replaced by granulation tissue - Fibroblasts and endothelial cells proliferate - Neovascularization begins 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Soft tissue begins to look pink and moist - Less pain - Early epithelial coverage at socket margins
Proliferative Phase	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Osteoprogenitor cells differentiate to osteoblasts - Osteoid deposition begins - Woven bone starts forming from socket walls inward 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Socket appears smaller - Gingival closure advancing - No signs of infection or inflammation

	- Continued epithelialization	- Firmness increases as bone forms beneath
Remodelling Phase	- Woven bone gradually replaced by mature lamellar bone - Ongoing osteoblastic/osteoclastic activity - Re-establishment of marrow spaces	- Fully closed soft tissue - Normal color and texture of gingiva - No swelling or discomfort - Ridge contour may change (resorption visible clinically)

Preservation and Augmentation of Extraction Sockets

- Traditional indications for tooth extraction are well established, but clear pathological criteria for socket preservation or augmentation remain limited. Histological studies confirm that post-extraction sockets, especially those with pre-existing pathology such as *chronic inflammation, cystic changes, or periapical lesions*, are prone to accelerated bone resorption and compromised healing. In such cases, socket preservation techniques aim to maintain ridge dimensions and support tissue regeneration.
- Soft tissue grafts may be indicated in sites with thin biotypes to prevent gingival collapse, while *bone grafts* or *biomaterials* are often necessary where the socket walls are deficient. Evidence shows that preserved or augmented sockets exhibit reduced resorption compared to sites managed with immediate implants alone.
- Recent frameworks offer clinical decision-making pathways, particularly in aesthetic zones or where prosthetic rehabilitation is planned.

Dental Implant and the Extraction Socket

Pathological Damage and the Need for Augmentation

- In cases where the extraction socket is compromised due to pathology—such as periapical lesions, cystic degeneration, or trauma—preservation of the socket is often not feasible. The loss of one or more socket walls requires ridge augmentation rather than preservation, as the anatomical structure necessary for maintenance no longer exists. These pathological alterations necessitate a

reconstructive approach to restore alveolar architecture suitable for future prosthetic rehabilitation.

- Sockets affected by chronic infection, such as those resulting from endodontic lesions or periodontal disease, present a higher risk for microbial contamination and delayed healing. Immediate implantation in such sites raises concerns regarding osseointegration and peri-implant health.
- However, studies have shown that with thorough debridement, antibiotic prophylaxis, and elimination of infectious foci, successful outcomes can still be achieved, even in infected sockets. Proper socket cleansing and inflammation control are critical in these scenarios.
- Pathologically induced bone loss, particularly of the buccal plate, significantly alters the socket morphology. When buccal bone thickness is less than 2 mm or partially absent, the likelihood of post-extraction ridge collapse is increased. Thin or dehiscenced buccal plates, often due to chronic inflammatory pathology, require socket augmentation to prevent excessive horizontal and vertical resorption. This underlines the importance of assessing pathological bone integrity before selecting a treatment protocol.
- Systemic pathological conditions, such as uncontrolled diabetes or osteoporosis, and local factors like sinus proximity or nerve involvement, can complicate socket healing and regeneration. Furthermore, extraction of teeth with endodontic failures or extensive apical pathology may require additional interventions, such as bone grafting or staged implantation, to reduce the risk of complications like apical peri-implantitis or implant failure.
- In pathological extraction sockets, immediate implant placement is often not feasible due to the lack of sufficient bone support. When bone beyond the apex of the socket is less than 3 mm and there is no contact between the implant and the socket walls, achieving primary stability is not possible. In molar regions, the absence of septal bone—commonly seen in sockets affected by infection, cysts, or trauma—further limits implant anchorage. These conditions require *augmentation procedures*, as attempting immediate placement without adequate support can compromise implant success.

Where do we go from here?

Sockets affected by infection, cysts, or chronic inflammation often show partial/complete loss of bony walls and reduced apical bone height. Thus, the following principles can be applied:

- **Risk of Immediate Implantation:** These sockets carry a high risk of contamination, poor primary stability, and early implant failure if implants are placed immediately.
- **Initial Management:** Thorough debridement and curettage to remove necrotic tissue, granulation tissue, and microbial load. Irrigation with antiseptic solutions to reduce infection risk.
- **Socket Augmentation:** Placement of bone graft material to restore lost socket volume. Use of a *barrier membrane* (resorbable or non-resorbable) to stabilize the graft and guide bone regeneration.
- **Delayed Implant Placement:** Implant is placed after 4–6 months, once sufficient bone regeneration is confirmed. Ensures better primary stability, osseointegration, and long-term success.
- **Follow-up:** Monitor for signs of residual infection or graft failure during healing period.

Points to Remember

- Healing after extraction follows five key stages: *haemostasis, inflammation, granulation, proliferation, and bone remodelling*. Complete bone healing typically takes 3–6 months.
- Alveolar bone resorption begins soon after extraction, especially in the buccal region, due to loss of mechanical stimulation.
- Socket preservation is important in aesthetic zones or in sockets with pathology. It helps maintain bone volume and soft tissue contours.
- Techniques for preservation include the use of bone grafts, resorbable/non-resorbable membranes, and soft tissue grafting.
- Pathological sockets (e.g., with infection, cysts, or trauma) often have compromised bone and are not suitable for immediate implant placement.

CHAPTER 5

IMPLANT PLACEMENT AFTER TOOTH EXTRACTION: TIMING, SURGICAL PRINCIPLES AND CLINICAL CONSIDERATIONS



Dr Sundaram Rajaram

*MDS, FAFS, FIAOMS, FIBCSOMS, FICOI,
MFDS RCS, FDS RCS (ENGLAND)*

Oral & Maxillofacial Surgeon

Implant Specialist

Private Practitioner

Sharjah, United Arab Emirates

-
- Tooth extraction initiates a cascade of biological events that culminate in dimensional changes of the alveolar ridge.
 - In contemporary implant dentistry, the post-extraction socket is regarded not as an endpoint but as a therapeutic opportunity to establish a prosthetically driven, biologically sound implant site.
 - This chapter reviews the current evidence and clinical principles related to implant placement in extraction sockets, with particular emphasis on timing (immediate, early, and delayed placement), three-dimensional (3D) implant positioning, and hard and soft tissue management.

Timing of Implant Placement Following Extraction

- The timing of implant placement after tooth extraction is a critical determinant of both functional and aesthetic outcomes.
- Several classification systems exist; a commonly used scheme distinguishes among immediate, early, and delayed placement, each with specific indications, advantages, and limitations.

1. Immediate Implant Placement

- Immediate implant placement is defined as placement of a dental implant into a fresh extraction socket during the same surgical appointment. Potential advantages include reduced treatment time, fewer surgical interventions, and partial preservation of alveolar ridge architecture.
- However, predictable outcomes require stringent case selection and precise surgical technique.

Clinical Indications and Requirements -

- Intact or minimally compromised socket walls, especially the buccal plate
- Absence of acute purulent infection
- Adequate apical or palatal/lingual bone to achieve primary stability
- Favourable soft tissue conditions and periodontal health of adjacent teeth

Biologic considerations -

- *Araujo et al.* demonstrated that even with immediate implant placement, post-extraction remodelling of the buccal plate and marginal bone loss still occur.
- The buccal bone—often thin and predominantly bundle bone—is particularly susceptible to resorption, which can compromise aesthetic outcomes in the anterior maxilla.

“Jumping Distance” and Gap Management -

- The horizontal gap between the implant surface and inner socket wall (“jumping distance”) is a key parameter. For gaps exceeding approximately 2mm, grafting with particulate bone substitutes (*autogenous, allograft, xenograft, or alloplasts*) and, when indicated, a barrier membrane, is generally recommended to enhance buccal contour and minimize horizontal/vertical resorption.

Diagnostic and Technical Considerations -

- *Preoperative imaging:* Cone beam computed tomography (CBCT) provides 3D assessment of socket morphology, buccal plate thickness, proximity to anatomical structures, and presence of dehiscence or

fenestrations, and is superior to panoramic imaging for pre-implant assessment.

- *Atraumatic extraction*: Minimally invasive extraction with *periotomes*, *luxators*, or *piezoelectric devices* helps preserve the buccal plate and soft tissue architecture. Preservation of the buccal plate is essential for maintaining soft tissue support and *midfacial contour*, especially in the aesthetic zone.
- *Contraindications and Risk Factors*: Active, uncontrolled infection, severe bone loss, and poor systemic or local conditions (e.g., uncontrolled diabetes, heavy smoking, untreated periodontitis) may necessitate deferring implant placement.

Key Points (Immediate Placement) -

- Indicated in carefully selected sites with intact or nearly intact bony housing.
- Primary stability is typically achieved apically or palatally/lingually.
- Gap grafting and meticulous soft tissue management are essential in aesthetic regions.

2. Early Implant Placement (4–8 Weeks Post-Extraction)

- Early implant placement refers to insertion after initial soft tissue closure and early bone healing (approximately 4–8 weeks after extraction). During this interval, the socket undergoes partial remodelling while soft tissue coverage stabilizes.

Rationale and Advantages -

- Soft tissue closure reduces risk of wound dehiscence and contamination.
- Partial ridge remodelling has occurred, yet dimensional changes are usually less advanced than at 3–6 months.
- The soft tissue envelope can often be manipulated more predictably for aesthetic contouring.

Socket Preservation and Ridge Management -

- Socket grafting at the time of extraction has been shown to reduce the degree of horizontal and vertical bone loss, preserving ridge volume for early or delayed placement. Materials include *xenografts*, *allografts*, and *alloplasts*, often combined with collagen membranes.

- Systematic reviews indicate that ridge preservation procedures significantly mitigate post-extraction resorption compared with spontaneous healing.

Guided Bone Regeneration (GBR) -

- When minor to moderate defects are present at 4–8 weeks, GBR with *particulate grafts* and *resorbable membranes* can be employed to re-establish an adequate bony envelope around the implant.
- Early placement offers a favourable scenario for combined implant placement and simultaneous GBR, given improved soft tissue quality over a fresh socket.

Patient-Related Factors -

- Systemic conditions and habits (e.g., smoking, poorly controlled diabetes) can impair healing, reduce vascularity, and increase complication rates. In such patients, extended healing intervals and staged augmentation may be preferable.

Key Points (Early Placement) -

- Balances reduced resorption compared to delayed placement with improved soft tissue conditions compared to immediate placement.
- Well suited for sites with minor defects and for combining implant placement with simultaneous GBR.
- Particularly useful in the aesthetic zone when soft tissue stability and contour are critical.

3. Delayed Implant Placement (3–6 Months Post-Extraction)

- Delayed placement typically occurs after complete soft tissue closure and substantial bone remodelling, often 3–6 months following extraction.
- This approach remains widely used, particularly in compromised sockets.

Indications –

- Extraction sockets with extensive bone loss or buccal plate dehiscence
- Sites with previous infection or endodontic pathology requiring resolution
- Need for staged ridge augmentation procedures (e.g., block grafts)

- Patients with compromised healing capacity or complex systemic conditions

Advantages –

- A fully healed ridge provides predictable soft tissue coverage and access for augmentation. The extent of ridge deficiency is more easily assessed clinically and radiographically.
- Staged augmentation procedures (*onlay block grafts, distraction osteogenesis*) can be undertaken with greater control.

Limitations -

- Greater horizontal and vertical resorption compared with immediate or early placement, particularly in the maxillary anterior region.
- Often requires more extensive ridge augmentation, which may increase morbidity, cost, and treatment time.

Ridge Augmentation Strategies -

Onlay/block grafts: Autogenous block grafts harvested from intraoral donor sites (e.g., symphysis, ramus) remain a predictable option for localized, severe defects.

Distraction Osteogenesis: Can be indicated for vertical ridge deficiency, though it is technique-sensitive and requires patient compliance.

Combination approaches: GBR combined with autogenous chips and xenograft particles under membranes is frequently used to optimize volume and contour.

Key Points (Delayed Placement) –

- Provides maximal control over hard and soft tissue conditions at the expense of longer treatment time.
- Often necessary in severely compromised sites.
- Ridge preservation at extraction remains important even when delayed placement is planned.

Three-Dimensional Implant Positioning

- Irrespective of timing, correct 3D implant positioning is fundamental for biomechanical stability, peri-implant health, and aesthetic outcome.
- Mis-positioning can lead to soft tissue recession, compromised emergence profiles, and biologic or technical complications.

Buccolingual Position –

- The implant platform in the *anterior maxilla* should typically be positioned slightly palatal to the ideal crown emergence. This facilitates:
 - ✓ Preservation of buccal bone and soft tissue thickness
 - ✓ A favourable emergence profile with adequate support for the facial soft tissues
 - ✓ Reduction in the risk of buccal plate dehiscence and midfacial recession
- In the posterior regions, centre-of-ridge positioning is usually appropriate, provided occlusal loading and screw-access trajectories are respected.

Mesiodistal Position –

- Adequate distance from adjacent teeth and implants is crucial for maintaining interproximal bone and papillary height.
- A minimum of approximately 1.5-2.0 mm between an implant and an adjacent tooth is recommended.
- Inter-implant distances of at least 3.0mm help preserve interproximal bone peaks and papillary form.
- Inadequate spacing can compromise hygiene access, lead to bone loss, and result in papillary deficiency.

Apicocoronal Position -

- Vertical positioning of the implant shoulder influences the final soft tissue margin and emergence profile. In the aesthetic zone:
- The implant platform is commonly placed approximately 2-3mm apical to the planned facial free gingival margin.
- Excessively shallow placement may lead to metal display or inadequate emergence profile.
- Excessively deep placement may predispose to marginal bone loss and complicate maintenance.

Digital Planning and Surgical Guides –

- Digitally guided surgery, utilizing CBCT data combined with intraoral or laboratory scans, allows prosthetically driven planning and transfer of the virtual plan to the operative field.
- Computer-generated surgical templates can improve:

- ✓ Accuracy of implant position, angulation, and depth
- ✓ Safety around critical anatomical structures
- ✓ Predictability in immediate placement and full-arch cases
- However, clinicians must remain aware of potential sources of error, including *imaging artifacts*, *scan registration inaccuracies*, and *guide stability issues*.

Platform Switching -

- The concept of platform switching—using an abutment of smaller diameter than the implant platform—has been associated with reduced crestal bone loss.
- The horizontal offset at the implant–abutment interface is thought to:
 - ✓ Displace the inflammatory cell infiltrate away from the crestal bone
 - ✓ Contribute to improved soft tissue volume and stability at the neck of the implant
- Clinical data suggest that platform-switched connections can enhance marginal bone preservation and, indirectly, soft tissue outcomes, particularly in aesthetic zones.

Anatomical Considerations -

- Careful identification and avoidance of vital structures are imperative.
 - ✓ Mandible: Inferior alveolar nerve, mental foramen, submandibular fossa concavity
 - ✓ Maxilla: Maxillary sinus, nasal floor, incisive canal
- Preoperative CBCT, tactile perception during osteotomy preparation, and, where appropriate, nerve monitoring or sinus augmentation techniques (lateral window or transcrestal approaches) help minimize complications.

Soft Tissue Management Around Implants

- Peri-implant soft tissues are integral to the long-term success and aesthetic integration of implant restorations.
- Evidence suggests that adequate keratinized mucosa and soft tissue thickness are associated with improved plaque control, reduced mucosal inflammation, and more stable marginal bone levels.

Preservation of Existing Soft Tissues -

- Atraumatic extraction techniques and gentle soft tissue handling reduce trauma and maintain the existing gingival architecture.
- Key principles include:
 - ✓ Use of sharp instruments and periostomes to minimize flap elevation where feasible
 - ✓ Avoidance of excessive traction or compression of soft tissues
 - ✓ Preservation of papillae and marginal gingiva in aesthetic areas
- Such measures are critical in immediate and early placement protocols, where native soft tissue contours can be leveraged for aesthetic benefit.

Soft Tissue Augmentation -

- Soft tissue grafting can be performed at various stages (before, during, or after implant placement) to optimize peri-implant tissue quality and quantity.
- ❖ *Connective tissue grafts:* Sub-epithelial connective tissue grafts harvested from the palate are widely used to increase facial soft tissue thickness, mask abutment shine-through, and improve midfacial stability. They are particularly important in thin biotypes and high-smile-line patients.
- ❖ *Free gingival grafts:* Primarily indicated to increase the width of keratinized mucosa, typically in posterior regions or around implants with insufficient attached mucosa. They are less commonly employed in highly aesthetic zones due to potential colour mismatch.
- ❖ *Soft tissue substitutes:* Collagen matrices and acellular dermal matrices may reduce donor site morbidity and operative time. Long-term comparative data continue to emerge.

Provisionalization and Emergence Profile -

- Provisional restorations play a central role in shaping peri-implant soft tissues and establishing a physiologic emergence profile.
- ✓ Implant-supported provisionals (when primary stability allows) can be used to gradually contour the peri-implant mucosa.
- ✓ Customized healing abutments can be fabricated chair side or via CAD/CAM to mirror the cervical contour of the planned definitive restoration.

- By progressively modifying the emergence profile of the provisional restoration, clinicians can sculpt interdental papillae, midfacial convexity, and the depth of the mucosal sulcus.

Suturing and Wound Closure -

- Appropriate flap design and suturing techniques are essential to ensure tension-free primary closure over grafts and implants, especially when GBR or block grafting is performed.
 - ✓ Employ interrupted and mattress sutures (horizontal or vertical) to secure flaps without excessive tension.
 - ✓ Use of fine, monofilament, often resorbable suture materials helps maintain wound integrity and reduce plaque accumulation.

Soft Tissue Biotype and Risk Assessment -

- Soft tissue biotype (thin vs. thick) significantly influences vulnerability to recession and transparency of restorative components.
 - ✓ *Thin biotype*: Increased risk of midfacial recession, especially with buccal plate deficiency or malpositioned implants. These patients benefit from more conservative flap management, palatal/lingual implant positioning, and pre- or peri-implant soft tissue thickening.
 - ✓ *Thick biotype*: Generally, more resistant to recession and capable of concealing minor underlying discrepancies; however, over-contouring must be avoided.

Summary and Clinical Implications

- Implant placement in extraction sockets requires integration of biologic principles, patient-specific risk assessment, and prosthetically driven planning.
- ❖ **Timing**: Immediate, early, and delayed placement each have defined indications. Immediate placement can shorten treatment time but demands ideal local conditions and careful management of the gap and buccal plate. Early placement often represents a biologically and aesthetically favourable compromise. Delayed placement remains the approach of choice in severely compromised or infected sites and when extensive augmentation is needed.
- ❖ **3D positioning**: Correct buccolingual, mesiodistal, and apicocoronal positioning is fundamental to achieving stable hard and soft tissue

conditions and a predictable aesthetic outcome. Digital planning and guided surgery can enhance accuracy when used judiciously.

- ❖ **Soft tissue management:** Preservation and augmentation of peri-implant soft tissues, along with appropriate provisionalization, are key determinants of long-term esthetic stability. Biotype assessment and targeted interventions (e.g., connective tissue grafts, customized healing abutments) should be part of routine planning.
- By applying *evidence-based protocols* and *meticulous surgical and prosthetic techniques*, clinicians can convert the post-extraction socket into a predictable foundation for long-term functional and esthetic implant rehabilitation.

BIBLIOGRAPHY:

1. Botticelli D, Berglundh T, Lindhe J. Immediate implant placement and immediate loading: an overview of the literature. *Clin Oral Implants Res.* 2004; 15(2):189–194.
2. Den Hartog L, Raghoobar GM, Stellingsma K, Vissink A. Immediate versus delayed placement of implants in the aesthetic zone: a systematic review. *Int J Oral Maxillofac Implants.* 2008; 23(1):46–55.
3. Araujo MG, Sukekava F, Wennström JL, Lindhe J. Ridge alterations following implant placement in fresh extraction sockets: an experimental study in dogs. *J Clin Periodontol.* 2006; 33(9):640–648.
4. Bornstein MM, Halbritter SA, Weber D, Buser D, von Arx T. Pre-implant radiographic assessment: comparison of panoramic and computed tomography imaging. *Int J Oral Maxillofac Implants.* 2014; 29(Suppl):8–21.
5. Blus C, Szmukler-Moncler S, Khoury F. Minimally invasive tooth extraction and immediate implant placement: a clinical study. *Clin Oral Implants Res.* 2015; 26(Suppl 11):224–230.
6. Sanz M, Chapple ILC. Clinical research on peri-implant diseases: 1. A systematic review on prevalence and risk factors. *J Clin Periodontol.* 2012; 39(Suppl 12):203–241.
7. Schropp L, Wenzel A, Kostopoulos L, Karring T. Bone healing and soft tissue contour changes following single-tooth extraction: a

- clinical and radiographic 12-month prospective study. **Int J Periodontics Restorative Dent.** 2003; 23(4):313–323.
8. Wang HL, Boyapati L. “Sandwich” bone augmentation technique: rationale and report of pilot clinical cases. **Int J Periodontics Restorative Dent.** 2006; 26(5):455–463.
 9. Avila-Ortiz G, Rodriguez-Velez MI, Olmedo DG, et al. Efficacy of different socket grafting materials for alveolar ridge preservation: a systematic review and meta-analysis. **J Periodontol.** 2015; 86(6):687–708.
 10. De Bruyn H, Collaert B. The influence of smoking on early bone remodelling around titanium implants. **Int J Oral Maxillofac Implants.** 1994; 9(5):555–562.
 11. Lindhe J, Tarnow D. Esthetics around implants. A surgical perspective. **Periodontol 2000.** 2002; 28:55–63.
 12. Jensen SS, Terheyden H. Bone augmentation procedures in localized defects in the alveolar ridge: clinical results with different bone grafts and bone-substitute materials. **Int J Oral Maxillofac Implants.** 2009; 24(Suppl):218–236.
 13. Van der Weijden F, Dell’Acqua F, Slot DE. Alveolar bone dimensional changes of post-extraction sockets in humans: a systematic review. **J Clin Periodontol.** 2009; 36(12):1048–1058.
 14. Buser D, Belser UC, Wismeijer D. **ITI Treatment Guide. Vol. 3: Implant Placement in the Esthetic Zone: Single-Tooth Restorations.** Berlin: Quintessence Publishing; 2015.
 15. Grunder U, Gracis S, Capelli M. Influence of the 3-D bone-to-implant relationship on esthetics. **Int J Periodontics Restorative Dent.** 2005; 25(2):113–119.
 16. Tarnow DP, Cho SC, Wallace SS. The effect of inter-implant distance on the height of the interproximal bone crest. **J Periodontol.** 2000; 71(4):546–549.
 17. Linkevicius T, Apse P, Grybauskas S, Puisys A. The influence of soft tissue thickness on crestal bone changes around implants: a 1-year prospective controlled clinical trial. **Int J Oral Maxillofac Implants.** 2009; 24(4):712–719.
 18. D’haese J, Ackermann KL, Wismeijer D, De Bruyn H, Tahmaseb A. Accuracy of computer-guided implant surgery: a systematic review

- and meta-analysis. **Clin Implant Dent Relat Res.** 2012; 14(3):321–335.
19. Lazzara RJ, Porter SS. Platform switching: a new concept in implant dentistry for controlling post-implant crestal bone levels. **Int J Periodontics Restorative Dent.** 2006; 26(1):9–17.
20. Misch CE. **Contemporary Implant Dentistry.** 3rd ed. St. Louis: Mosby/Elsevier; 2018.
21. Berglundh T, Lindhe J, Ericsson I, Marinello CP, Liljenberg B, Thomsen P. The soft tissue barrier at implants and teeth. **Clin Oral Implants Res.** 1991; 2(2):81–90.
22. Cairo F, Nieri M, Pagliaro U. Surgical treatment of gingival recessions: a systematic review. **J Clin Periodontol.** 2008; 35(Suppl 8):136–162.
23. Su H, Gonzalez-Martin O, Weisgold A, Lee EA. Considerations of the prosthetic emergence profile for single-tooth implants in the esthetic zone: clinical report. **Int J Periodontics Restorative Dent.** 2010; 30(1):31–38.
24. Funato A, Salama MA, Ishikawa T, Garber DA, Salama H. Timing, positioning, and sequential staging in esthetic implant therapy: a four-dimensional perspective. **Int J Periodontics Restorative Dent.** 2007; 27(4):313–323.
25. Olsson M, Lindhe J. Periodontal characteristics in individuals with varying form of the upper central incisors. **J Clin Periodontol.** 1991;18(1):78–82.

CHAPTER 6

SURGICAL PRESERVATION & REHABILITATION OF THE EXTRACTION SOCKET



Dr Arjun Raj, MDS

Oral & Maxillofacial Surgeon

Registrar – Oral and Maxillofacial Surgery

Jaber Al Ahmed Dental Centre

Ministry of Health

Kuwait City, Kuwait

-
- Exodontia, or tooth extraction, remains one of the most commonly performed procedures in dental and oral surgical practice. While it may seem straightforward, the decision to remove a tooth involves a complex interplay of diagnostic reasoning, clinical judgment, and patient-specific considerations.
 - The extraction of a tooth is often the culmination of a sequence of preventive, restorative, and therapeutic interventions aimed at preserving the dentition. When these measures fail or are deemed unsuitable, exodontia becomes a necessary intervention.
 - Modern dental and oral surgical practices emphasise a *conservative approach*, where the preservation of natural dentition is prioritised. However, when a tooth is deemed non-restorable, potentially harmful, or poses a risk to general or systemic health, its removal may be indicated.
 - Moreover, the process of extraction is not merely limited to the act of removing the tooth. It involves a comprehensive pre-operative

- evaluation, meticulous surgical execution, careful post-operative care, and planning for socket preservation and eventual rehabilitation.
- In this chapter, we will comprehensively explore the *foundational aspects of exodontia*, including the reasons for tooth extraction, pre- and post-extraction considerations, precautions (both general and medical), and the principles of socket preservation and rehabilitation.
 - Each section is designed to provide clinically relevant insights from the perspective of an oral and maxillofacial surgeon, with emphasis on evidence-based practices and current literature.

Reasons for Extraction: Why Would Extraction Be Indicated?

- Tooth extraction may be indicated for a variety of reasons, broadly classified into pathological, prosthetic, orthodontic, and systemic categories. Each indication should be carefully evaluated with a view to the patient's overall dental and medical condition.

1. *Gross Dental Caries* -

Dental caries remains one of the most common causes of tooth extraction globally, particularly in populations with limited access to dental care. When a tooth is so extensively decayed that it cannot be restored using conventional restorative techniques—such as fillings, crowns, or root canal therapy—extraction may be the only viable option. Grossly carious teeth can also serve as foci of infection, leading to periapical abscesses, cellulitis, or even systemic complications like osteomyelitis or septicæmia. In such cases, timely extraction can prevent further morbidity.

2. *Periodontal Disease* -

Periodontal disease, particularly *advanced periodontitis*, leads to progressive destruction of the supporting structures of teeth—namely the alveolar bone, periodontal ligament, and gingiva. As the disease progresses, teeth may become mobile, cause pain, or it may interfere with mastication. When periodontal support is inadequate for functional retention, extraction becomes necessary. It is also indicated when a periodontally compromised tooth serves as a nidus of infection or when it compromises the outcome of adjacent prosthetic restorations.

3. *Orthodontic Reasons* -

In orthodontic treatment planning, tooth extraction is sometimes necessary to create space for alignment of teeth, correction of crowding,

or improvement in facial aesthetics. Common examples include the extraction of first premolars in *Class II Division I malocclusions* to facilitate anterior retraction. It is important to carefully assess the dental arch, occlusal relationships, and soft tissue profile before deciding on extractions for orthodontic purposes. The goal is to achieve a balanced and stable occlusion with minimal compromise to the patient's function and appearance.

4. *Prosthetic Considerations -*

Teeth may also be extracted to enhance prosthetic outcomes, especially in cases involving complete or partial dentures. Retaining teeth with poor prognosis may interfere with denture fit, retention, and stability. Extraction may be part of pre-prosthetic surgery, such as *alveoloplasty*, to create a smooth ridge for denture fabrication. Additionally, in implant planning, hopeless teeth in the intended implant site must be removed, often followed by ridge preservation procedures.

5. *Impacted or Unerupted Teeth -*

Impacted teeth, especially third molars, are commonly extracted when they cause symptoms or are associated with pathologies such as pericoronitis, caries in adjacent teeth, cyst formation, or resorption of neighbouring roots. Prophylactic removal of impacted third molars remains controversial but may be considered in cases with high risk of future complications. Unerupted or ectopic teeth that compromise adjacent structures or interfere with normal occlusion may also require removal.

6. *Fractured Teeth or Roots -*

Traumatic injuries can result in vertical or horizontal root fractures, or extensive crown fractures involving the pulp and extending subgingivally. When restorative procedures are not feasible due to limited tooth structure or poor prognosis, extraction is indicated. Similarly, retained root stumps without strategic value may be removed to prevent complications such as infection or cyst formation.

7. *Supernumerary or Malpositioned Teeth -*

Supernumerary teeth, such as *mesiodens* or *paramolars*, may interfere with normal eruption, alignment, or aesthetics. Malpositioned teeth, particularly those outside the dental arch or rotated severely, may also hinder occlusal function or prosthetic rehabilitation. In such scenarios,

extraction helps streamline the dental arch and support functional restoration.

8. *Odontogenic Infections -*

Uncontrolled odontogenic infections originating from pulpally involved teeth may necessitate emergency extractions, particularly if associated with systemic symptoms like fever, trismus, or facial swelling. Extraction removes the source of infection and facilitates drainage and resolution. Antibiotic therapy alone is insufficient in the presence of a necrotic tooth root acting as a persistent source of infection.

9. *Pre-Radiation or Bisphosphonate Therapy -*

Patients undergoing radiation therapy for head and neck cancers or receiving antiresorptive medications (like *bisphosphonates* or *denosumab*) are at increased risk of developing *osteoradionecrosis* or *medication-related osteonecrosis of the jaw* (MRONJ). Teeth with questionable prognosis should ideally be extracted before such therapy to reduce the risk of these debilitating complications. Detailed planning with the oncology team is essential in such cases.

10. *Financial and Socio-Economic Constraints -*

In some cases, financial limitations may restrict the patient's ability to pursue complex restorative treatments. While every attempt should be made to preserve natural dentition, extractions may be performed as a last resort when other treatment options are unaffordable or unavailable. Ethical considerations must be kept in mind, ensuring that the patient is adequately informed about all available options and the consequences of tooth loss.

11. *Psychological or Behavioural Factors -*

Patients with severe dental phobia, psychiatric illness, or cognitive impairments may be unable to cooperate with intricate restorative or endodontic procedures. In such cases, especially where oral hygiene is poor and compliance is uncertain, extraction of non-functional or problematic teeth may be the most pragmatic course of action to prevent future complications.

Pre-Extraction Considerations

- Pre-extraction evaluation is one of the most critical phases in exodontia. A thorough understanding of the patient's dental and systemic condition

not only helps ensure the safety of the procedure but also contributes significantly to favourable outcomes. This stage involves diagnostic, clinical, radiographic, and sometimes interdisciplinary assessments.

- The goal is to anticipate potential complications, optimise patient care, and tailor the approach to each individual case.

Medical History and Systemic Evaluation -

- A comprehensive medical history is essential before any surgical procedure, including tooth extraction. Understanding the patient's systemic health helps identify conditions that could increase the risk of complications during or after the procedure.
- ✓ *Cardiovascular Disease:* Patients with a history of myocardial infarction, angina, hypertension, or those on anticoagulant therapy require special precautions. For instance, patients with prosthetic heart valves or previous infective endocarditis may require antibiotic prophylaxis as per the *American Heart Association* guidelines. Medical fitness from the patient's cardiologist is mandatory in such cases.
- ✓ *Bleeding Disorders and Anticoagulation:* A thorough assessment of clotting profile (INR, PT, aPTT) is critical in patients with known bleeding tendencies or those taking warfarin, DOACs, or antiplatelet medications. Coordination with the patient's physician may be necessary to manage anticoagulation peri-operatively.
- ✓ *Diabetes Mellitus:* Poorly controlled diabetes increases the risk of infection and delayed wound healing. Ideally, extractions should be scheduled when glycaemic control is optimal (HbA1c <7.5%) with strong antibiotic coverage.
- ✓ *Immunosuppression:* Patients on chemotherapy, steroids, or immunosuppressive drugs, or those with conditions such as HIV/AIDS, are at increased risk of infection and may heal poorly.
- ✓ *Renal and Hepatic Impairment:* These patients may have altered drug metabolism and compromised haemostasis, requiring modifications in medication choices and dosage.
- ✓ *Pregnancy:* Elective extractions are best postponed during the first and third trimesters. When absolutely necessary, the second trimester is the safest period for performing extractions.
- A detailed drug history is also imperative. Apart from anticoagulants and immunosuppressants, drugs like bisphosphonates and denosumab can

significantly impact bone healing and predispose the patient to osteonecrosis, particularly if invasive procedures are undertaken.

- In most cases of systemic diseases it is always advised to consult and coordinate with the patient's primary care physician prior to exodontia in order to avoid undue complications.

Dental History and Examination -

- A targeted dental history provides insights into the onset, duration, and progression of the presenting complaint. It also identifies previous treatments and outcomes that may influence the current plan. The clinical examination should assess:
 - ✓ The presence of pain, mobility, swelling, sinus tracts, or discharge
 - ✓ Periodontal status and pocket depth
 - ✓ Degree of tooth destruction and restorability
 - ✓ The position of the tooth within the arch, angulation, and occlusion
 - ✓ Proximity to adjacent structures such as nerves, sinuses, or prostheses
- An understanding of the patient's oral hygiene habits, habits like smoking or bruxism, and past compliance with dental care are also relevant, especially in planning for future prosthetic or implant rehabilitation.

Radiographic Assessment -

- Radiographs are indispensable in evaluating the tooth and surrounding structures. The choice between intraoral periapical radiographs, panoramic radiographs, and CBCT depends on the case complexity.
 - ✓ Root morphology and number of roots
 - ✓ Periapical pathology, including cysts or abscesses
 - ✓ Level of bone support and periodontal condition
 - ✓ Relationship to anatomical landmarks such as the maxillary sinus, mandibular canal, mental foramen, and adjacent teeth
 - ✓ Presence of unusual anatomy such as dilacerated roots or hypercementosis
- In cases of impacted teeth or complex root structures, CBCT provides superior three-dimensional visualisation and enhances surgical planning.

Psychological Assessment and Patient Consent -

- Dental anxiety or phobia can significantly impact the patient's experience and cooperation. For highly anxious individuals, additional measures such as premedication with anxiolytics or conscious sedation may be warranted. Effective communication is vital to explain the procedure, expected outcomes, and possible complications in simple and reassuring language.
- Informed consent must be obtained in writing. This should include:
 - ✓ The indication for extraction
 - ✓ The nature of the procedure
 - ✓ Risks and complications (e.g., pain, swelling, dry socket, nerve injury, sinus perforation)
 - ✓ Post-operative expectations and instructions
 - ✓ Alternatives to extraction (e.g., root canal therapy, periodontal treatment)
- Consent should always be voluntary, competent, and well-informed, respecting patient autonomy and legal standards.

Planning for Difficult Extractions -

- Certain cases demand advanced planning due to anatomical or pathological complexity.
- Impacted or malpositioned teeth - Require surgical techniques, flap design, bone removal, or sectioning.
- Close proximity to vital structures - For example, lower third molars near the inferior alveolar nerve, or upper molars adjacent to the maxillary sinus.
- Teeth with Hypercementosis or Ankylosis - May require surgical elevation and bone removal.
- Deciduous teeth in mixed dentition - Care must be taken not to damage underlying permanent successors.
- ✓ In such scenarios, the operator must be prepared with appropriate instruments, surgical protocols, and post-operative plans, or consider referring to a specialist when necessary.

Anaesthesia Planning –

- Local anaesthesia remains the standard for routine extractions.
- However, the choice and technique should consider -

- ✓ The patient's pain threshold and anxiety levels
- ✓ Need for multiple quadrant procedures
- ✓ Infiltration vs. block techniques, especially in posterior regions
- ✓ Contraindications to vasoconstrictors in medically compromised patients
- In certain cases—such as patients *with intellectual disabilities, severe anxiety, or extensive surgical extractions*—**Conscious Sedation** or **General Anaesthesia** may be indicated. These cases require a well-equipped surgical setting and a trained team.

Infection Control and Sterility-

- The extraction setting must follow strict aseptic protocols.
- Preoperative antiseptic mouth rinses (e.g., chlorhexidine) are recommended to reduce bacterial load.
- Operator hygiene, sterilised instruments, and a clean operative field are mandatory to prevent post-operative infections.
- In patients with active infections, drainage should be established before extraction whenever possible.

Antibiotic and Analgesic Planning -

- Although routine dental extractions may not require antibiotics, they are indicated in:
 - ✓ Patients with systemic risk factors (e.g., diabetes, immunosuppression)
 - ✓ Presence of spreading infection or cellulitis
 - ✓ History of infective endocarditis (requiring prophylaxis)
 - ✓ Surgical extractions with bone removal or sinus proximity
- Preoperative and post-operative analgesic planning also improves patient comfort. **Non-Steroidal Anti-Inflammatory Drugs** (NSAID's) are the mainstay unless contraindicated.

Post-extraction Considerations

- Post-extraction care is a critical phase that determines healing, patient comfort, and the long-term success of any rehabilitation plan.
- After the extraction of a tooth, the wound undergoes a complex healing process involving *haemostasis, inflammation, proliferation, and remodelling*.

- Proper post-operative instructions and monitoring can prevent complications such as *infection, dry socket, delayed healing, or bone resorption*.
- This section addresses the various clinical, physiological, and patient-related aspects that need to be considered once a tooth has been extracted.

Immediate Post-operative Instructions -

- Clear and comprehensive post-operative instructions should be given to the patient both verbally and in writing. These help minimise complications and foster cooperation in self-care.
- Instructions should include:
 - ✓ *Bleeding control:* Patients should be advised to bite down firmly on a sterile gauze pad placed over the socket for 30 to 45 minutes. If bleeding persists, they may use a fresh gauze or a moist tea bag, which contains tannic acid to promote clotting.
 - ✓ *Avoiding dislodgement of the clot:* Patients must not rinse their mouth vigorously, suck through a straw, smoke, or spit forcefully for at least 24 hours post-extraction to prevent clot dislodgement and dry socket.
 - ✓ *Dietary advice:* Soft, cool or lukewarm foods are recommended on the day of the extraction. Chewing should be avoided on the extraction side until healing begins.
 - ✓ *Pain management:* Prescribed analgesics (usually NSAIDs or acetaminophen) should be taken as instructed. Stronger pain relief may be required in surgical or multiple extractions.
 - ✓ *Oral hygiene:* While brushing should be avoided in the area for the first 24 hours, gentle rinsing with saline or antiseptic mouthwash may begin the next day to reduce microbial load.
 - ✓ *Physical activity:* Strenuous activity and heavy lifting should be avoided for 24–48 hours to reduce the risk of post-operative bleeding.
- Patients should be instructed to report immediately in case of excessive bleeding, severe pain after 48 hours, swelling, fever, or signs of infection.

Healing of the Extraction Socket -

- The healing of an extraction socket proceeds through distinct phases:
 - ✓ *Haemostasis and clot formation (first 24 hours):* The socket fills with blood, which clots and provides a matrix for cell migration.

- ✓ *Inflammation (1–3 days)*: Neutrophils and macrophages infiltrate the site, removing necrotic debris and bacteria.
- ✓ *Proliferation (3–14 days)*: Granulation tissue forms, and fibroblasts begin depositing collagen. Angiogenesis occurs, and epithelial proliferation starts at the margins.
- ✓ *Bone formation (2–6 weeks)*: Osteoblasts invade the socket and begin laying down new bone matrix.
- ✓ *Remodelling (3–6 months)*: The socket undergoes continuous remodelling to form mature lamellar bone.
- The presence of systemic conditions, habits such as smoking, or infection can delay healing.
- Interference with any stage, especially clot dislodgement, can lead to complications such as dry socket (alveolar osteitis).

Recognition and Management of Common Complications

1. *Dry Socket (Alveolar Osteitis) -*

- ✓ *Incidence*: More common in mandibular posterior teeth, especially third molars.
- ✓ *Presentation*: Severe throbbing pain usually 2–4 days after extraction, bad odour, and exposed bone in the socket.
- ✓ *Management*: Irrigation with saline or antiseptic solution, placement of medicated dressing (e.g., Zinc Oxide-Eugenol, Alvogyl), and analgesics. Antibiotics are not routinely needed unless infection is present.

2. *Post-operative Infection -*

- ✓ *Signs*: Increasing pain, swelling, fever, purulent discharge.
- ✓ *Management*: Drainage if abscess forms, culture and sensitivity if needed, and administration of appropriate antibiotics (e.g., Amoxicillin with Clavulanic Acid or Metronidazole).

3. *Post-operative Bleeding -*

- ✓ *Causes*: Inadequate haemostasis, clot dislodgement, or systemic bleeding tendencies.
- ✓ *Management*: Local measures include pressure packs, haemostatic agents (Oxidised Cellulose, Thrombin, and Gel Foam), suturing, or cautery. In severe cases, systemic evaluation and correction may be required.

4. *Nerve Injuries -*

- ✓ *Incidence:* Particularly with lower third molars in proximity to the inferior alveolar or lingual nerves.
 - ✓ *Presentation:* Numbness, tingling, or pain in the lip, chin, or tongue.
 - ✓ *Management:* Usually conservative—neuropathic pain medications may be used. Persistent cases beyond three months may need specialist referral or imaging.
- 5. Oro-Antral Communication (OAC) -**
- ✓ *Risk:* Extractions of upper molars in close proximity to the maxillary sinus.
 - ✓ *Signs:* Passage of air or fluid between mouth and nose, whistling sound, or altered voice.
 - ✓ *Management:* Small OACs (<2 mm) often heal spontaneously with sinus precautions; larger defects may require surgical closure using buccal or palatal advancement flaps.

Review and Follow-Up

- Routine post-extraction reviews are generally scheduled within 5–7 days.
- The aims are:
 - ✓ To assess healing and ensure that there is no infection or delayed healing
 - ✓ To remove sutures, if used
 - ✓ To reinforce oral hygiene and address patient queries
 - ✓ To initiate planning for rehabilitation of the missing tooth/teeth
- In surgical extractions, removal of impacted teeth, or patients with systemic disease, additional reviews may be needed. Documentation of healing status and complications (if any) must be done diligently.

Psychological and Social Considerations

- Tooth extraction, especially when visible teeth are involved, can affect the patient's self-esteem and social interactions.
- Patients must be reassured that tooth replacement options are available. Psychological counselling may occasionally be necessary for patients experiencing significant distress due to facial aesthetics or functional compromise.

General Precautions in Exodontia

- Tooth extraction, while commonly performed, is a minor surgical procedure that demands diligence, planning, and the application of fundamental surgical principles.
- General precautions are measures that apply universally across all patients to minimise complications, ensure safety, and improve procedural success.
- These precautions involve not only technical preparation but also environmental, ergonomic, aseptic, and procedural considerations.

1. *Informed Consent -*

- Before any dental extraction, obtaining valid informed consent is a legal and ethical obligation.
- The patient must be made aware of:
 - ✓ The reason for the extraction
 - ✓ The nature of the procedure
 - ✓ Expected outcomes
 - ✓ Possible risks and complications (bleeding, infection, pain, swelling, dry socket, nerve damage, etc.)
 - ✓ Alternatives to extraction, including restorative or endodontic treatment
 - ✓ Plans for post-extraction rehabilitation
- Consent should be obtained in writing, particularly for surgical extractions or when General or Conscious Sedation is used.

2. *Proper Case Selection and Planning -*

- Even the simplest extractions can become complicated without proper planning.
- The following must be carefully evaluated before proceeding:
 - ✓ *Access and visibility:* Adequate lighting and patient positioning are essential for clear visibility.
 - ✓ *Mobility of the tooth:* Ankylosed or impacted teeth may require surgical removal.
 - ✓ *Condition of the crown:* Carious or fractured crowns may necessitate sectioning or surgical access.
 - ✓ *Proximity to anatomical structures:* Especially the maxillary sinus, inferior alveolar canal, and adjacent teeth or prostheses.
 - ✓ *Patient compliance and anxiety levels:* These may affect cooperation, especially in children or individuals with special needs.

3. ***Aseptic Protocols -***

- A strict adherence to infection control and aseptic techniques is essential to prevent postoperative infections and cross-contamination.
- ✓ *Hand Hygiene:* Thorough washing before and after procedures.
- ✓ *Sterile Instruments:* All surgical instruments must be autoclaved and kept sterile.
- ✓ *Personal protective equipment (PPE):* Gloves, masks, eye protection, and gowns should be used.
- ✓ *Preoperative Antiseptic Rinse:* Chlorhexidine mouth rinse may be recommended to reduce oral microbial load.
- ✓ *Clean surgical field:* Suction, retraction, and isolation must be adequate.

4. ***Use of Appropriate Instruments -***

- The right instrument, used correctly, can simplify the procedure and reduce the risk of trauma.
- ✓ *Forceps and Elevators:* Must be selected based on the tooth being extracted.
- ✓ *Sharpness and Integrity:* Instruments should be checked regularly to avoid breakage or trauma.
- ✓ *Controlled Force:* Excessive pressure can fracture the alveolus or damage adjacent teeth.
- ✓ *Adequate Leverage:* Proper fulcrum placement and angulation are critical when using elevators.
- Instruments should be used with precision, not force, and the operator must always maintain a clear view of the working area.

5. ***Operator Positioning and Ergonomics -***

- Poor operator posture or incorrect patient positioning can lead to incomplete procedures, operator fatigue, or iatrogenic injury.
- General principles include:
- ✓ *Seated upright with feet flat:* The operator's back should be straight, and arms close to the body.
- ✓ *Patient's occlusal plane:* Should be horizontal for maxillary extractions and at a 45-degree angle for mandibular procedures.
- ✓ *Chair height:* The patient's mouth should be at the level of the operator's elbow.
- ✓ *Good lighting and suction:* Essential for visibility and safety.
- Maintaining good ergonomics improves efficiency and reduces operator fatigue during long or difficult extractions.

6. Minimising Trauma to Soft and Hard Tissues -

- Gentle handling of tissues is crucial for optimal healing and patient comfort.
- ✓ *Incision design (if needed):* Should allow access while preserving blood supply and avoiding critical structures.
- ✓ *Flap retraction:* Must be gentle and limited in duration to avoid tissue necrosis.
- ✓ *Bone removal and tooth sectioning:* Should be done with copious irrigation and minimal force.
- ✓ *Avoiding injury to adjacent structures:* Including adjacent teeth, restorations, prostheses, and anatomical landmarks.
- Trauma-free extractions minimise postoperative pain and swelling and accelerate healing.

7. Avoiding Iatrogenic Complications -

- Common preventable errors during extraction include:
- ✓ *Root fracture or retention:* Careful planning and radiographic assessment can minimise this.
- ✓ *Tooth displacement:* Roots may be displaced into the maxillary sinus, infratemporal fossa, or submandibular space.
- ✓ *Instrument slippage:* Can cause lacerations or damage to soft tissue.
- ✓ *Fracture of the alveolar bone or jaw:* Especially in older adults with atrophic mandibles.
- Prevention relies on anticipation, technique refinement, and readiness to convert to a surgical approach when needed.

8. Preparedness for Emergencies -

- All dental offices performing extractions must be equipped to handle medical emergencies.
- ✓ *Emergency drugs and oxygen supply:* Should be available and regularly checked.
- ✓ *Trained staff:* Basic Life Support (BLS) certification should be mandatory.
- ✓ *Monitoring of vital signs:* Especially in medically compromised patients.
- ✓ *Clear referral protocol:* For cases requiring higher-level care or hospital management.
- An emergency response plan must be rehearsed periodically to ensure readiness.

9. *Post-procedure Documentation -*

- Proper documentation is essential for medico legal and clinical purposes. Well-maintained records protect both the patient and practitioner.
- ✓ Details of the procedure performed
- ✓ Complications encountered
- ✓ Instructions given
- ✓ Medications prescribed
- ✓ Follow-up scheduled

Medical Precautions in Exodontia

- Exodontia in medically compromised patients demands a thorough understanding of systemic diseases and their implications on surgical procedures.
- Medical precautions are not only about identifying high-risk patients but also about modifying treatment plans, coordinating with physicians, and taking preventive measures to avoid complications.
- The following points outline key medical conditions and the associated precautions that should be considered before, during, and after tooth extraction.

1. *Cardiovascular Disease -*

- Patients with cardiovascular disease may include those with hypertension, ischemic heart disease, arrhythmias, or a history of myocardial infarction.
- ✓ *Hypertension*: Elective extractions should be deferred if blood pressure is >180/110 mmHg. Stress reduction protocols, short appointments, and use of local anaesthetics with minimal vasoconstrictors are advised.
- ✓ *Angina Pectoris and Myocardial Infarction History*: Ensure angina is stable; avoid procedures within 6 months of myocardial infarction. Nitroglycerine should be kept at hand, and stress should be minimised.
- ✓ *Arrhythmias and Pacemakers*: Electrosurgical instruments and ultrasonic devices may interfere with pacemakers. Consult the cardiologist if in doubt.
- ✓ *Antiplatelet/Anticoagulant Therapy*: Do not routinely discontinue medications like Aspirin or Clopidogrel. For Warfarin, INR should be ≤3.5 within 24–72 hours of extraction. New oral anticoagulants (NOACs) like Rivaroxaban may require coordinated management.

2. Diabetes Mellitus -

- Poorly controlled diabetics are at increased risk of infection, delayed healing, and poor glycaemic control due to surgical stress.
- ✓ *Timing*: Perform extractions in the morning, after the patient has eaten and taken medications.
- ✓ *Glycaemic Control*: Postpone elective surgery if HbA1c >8% or random blood glucose >200 mg/dL.
- ✓ *Antibiotic Coverage*: Often recommended for uncontrolled diabetics.
- ✓ *Follow-up*: Healing should be monitored closely and frequent reviews scheduled.

3. Bleeding Disorders -

- Patients may have congenital conditions (Haemophilia, Von Willebrand Disease) or acquired disorders due to medications or liver disease.
- ✓ *Preoperative Work-up*: Includes platelet count, bleeding time, clotting time, PT, aPTT, INR.
- ✓ *Haemophilia and von Willebrand Disease*: Require factor replacement therapy and close coordination with a haematologist.
- ✓ *Liver Disease*: Coagulation profiles may be deranged. Vitamin K, FFP or platelet transfusions may be necessary depending on severity.
- ✓ *Avoid Regional Nerve Blocks*: in cases with high bleeding risk due to risk of deep space haematomas.

4. Respiratory Conditions -

- ✓ *Asthma*: Avoid triggering anxiety. Aspirin and NSAIDs may precipitate attacks; consider Paracetamol. Keep Bronchodilators available.
- ✓ *Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease*: Use upright chair position. Avoid rubber dams or sedation that may depress respiration. Supplemental oxygen may be needed.
- ✓ *Tuberculosis*: Active TB is a contraindication to elective dental treatment. Urgent extractions should be done in a hospital setting with airborne precautions.

5. Renal Disease -

- Patients with chronic kidney disease (CKD) may have anaemia, hypertension, platelet dysfunction, and are prone to infection.
- ✓ *Timing*: Avoid extractions on the day of dialysis due to Heparinisation; schedule the day after.
- ✓ *Drug Dosage Adjustment*: Many antibiotics and analgesics require dose modification.

- ✓ *Avoid Nephrotoxins:* NSAIDs and certain antibiotics like aminoglycosides should be avoided.
- ✓ *Bleeding Risk:* Platelet dysfunction and uraemia may increase bleeding tendencies.
- 6. *Hepatic Disease -***
 - Patients with liver disease may show coagulopathies and impaired drug metabolism.
 - ✓ *Liver Function Tests:* Check ALT, AST, PT/INR levels.
 - ✓ *Haemostasis Measures:* Use local haemostatic agents and Vitamin K if indicated.
 - ✓ *Drug Selection:* Avoid hepatotoxic drugs such as large doses of Acetaminophen.
- 7. *Immunocompromised Patients -***
 - Includes HIV/AIDS, cancer patients on chemotherapy, transplant recipients, and those on long-term steroids.
 - ✓ *HIV/AIDS:* Evaluate CD4 count and viral load. CD4 <200 may require prophylactic antibiotics.
 - ✓ *Cancer Therapy:* Chemotherapy and Radiotherapy compromise immunity and healing. Avoid extractions during neutropenic phases (ANC <1,000 cells/ μ L).
 - ✓ *Osteoradionecrosis Risk:* Especially in irradiated jaws. Pre-radiation extractions are preferred when possible.
 - ✓ *Steroid Therapy:* May necessitate steroid supplementation (e.g., 25 mg hydrocortisone equivalent) to prevent adrenal crisis in long-term users.
- 8. *Pregnancy -***
 - While pregnancy is not a contraindication, the timing and safety of procedures must be evaluated carefully.
 - ✓ *Timing:* Second trimester is safest for dental procedures. Avoid elective procedures in the first and third trimesters.
 - ✓ *Positioning:* Supine hypotensive syndrome can occur; use a left lateral tilt positioning of the patient on the dental chair.
 - ✓ *Drugs:* Avoid teratogenic drugs (e.g., Tetracyclines, NSAIDs in third trimester). Lidocaine is generally safe.
 - ✓ *X-rays:* It is best to avoid radiography during pregnancy.
- 9. *Geriatric Patients -***
 - Older adults may have multiple co-morbidities, reduced bone density, or delayed healing.

- ✓ *Medical Evaluation:* Detailed history and medication review are critical.
- ✓ *Osteoporosis and Bisphosphonates:* Risk of medication-related Osteonecrosis of the jaw (MRONJ). Avoid traumatic extractions if patient is on IV Bisphosphonates.
- ✓ *Physical Considerations:* Longer healing times, fragile mucosa, and reduced salivary flow should be anticipated.

10. Poly-Pharmacy and Drug Interactions -

Multiple medications may interact with anaesthetics, antibiotics, or analgesics. A complete drug history must always be recorded, including over-the-counter and herbal medications.

- Common interactions include:
 - ✓ NSAIDs + Antihypertensives → reduced antihypertensive effect
 - ✓ Erythromycin + Theophylline → theophylline toxicity
 - ✓ Metronidazole + Alcohol → disulfiram-like reaction

Preservation of the Extraction Socket

- The preservation of the extraction socket has emerged as a cornerstone of contemporary dental and oral surgical practice.
- With the advent of **Implant Dentistry** and growing aesthetic expectations among patients, maintaining the volume and architecture of the alveolar ridge post-extraction is essential.
- Following the removal of a tooth, the alveolar bone—which exists solely to support dentition—undergoes rapid and irreversible resorption. Unless measures are taken to preserve the socket, the result is often a compromised site unsuitable for implant placement or aesthetic restoration without additional grafting procedures.
- **Socket preservation** refers to a set of clinical strategies aimed at maintaining or restoring the bone and soft tissue contours at the site of extraction.
- These may include surgical techniques during extraction, grafting of biomaterials into the socket, use of barrier membranes, and biological agents that promote healing and regeneration.

1. Rationale for Socket Preservation -

- The need for socket preservation is rooted in the biology of post-extraction healing and its clinical consequences.
- When a tooth is extracted, the following cascade occurs:

- ✓ *Alveolar bone loss begins immediately:* Within the first 3–6 months following extraction, the majority of the alveolar ridge resorption occurs. The buccal (labial) plate, often thinner than the palatal or lingual plate, is the most susceptible to loss. Studies indicate a mean horizontal bone loss of 3.8 mm and vertical loss of 1.24 mm within 6 months.
- ✓ *Resorption pattern is irreversible and non-uniform:* The outer (buccal) cortical bone is often lost entirely, especially in the anterior maxilla where the wall may be only 0.5 mm thick. Once lost, this bone does not regenerate naturally and requires augmentation.
- ✓ *Compromised Prosthetic Rehabilitation:* For fixed or removable prostheses, a reduced ridge results in poor support, retention, and aesthetics. Implant placement may become unfeasible or require advanced bone grafting.
- ✓ *Soft tissue complications:* Loss of bony support also leads to gingival recession and collapse of interdental papillae, which compromises aesthetic outcomes in visible areas.
- Hence, socket preservation is not merely about conserving bone but about planning for a future where prosthetic or implant-based restoration can be executed with optimal outcomes in terms of both function and appearance.

2. *Atraumatic Extraction Techniques -*

- One of the foundational principles of socket preservation is the execution of an atraumatic extraction.
- The goal is to remove the tooth while preserving the surrounding alveolar bone, particularly the delicate buccal plate, and ensuring minimal disruption of soft tissues.
- ✓ *Use of Periotomes and Luxators:* Periotomes are fine-bladed instruments designed to sever the periodontal ligament fibers. By gently insinuating the instrument along the root surface, the tooth is gradually mobilised without exerting pressure on the alveolar bone. Luxators work similarly but are angled for increased leverage in posterior teeth.
- ✓ *Sectioning of teeth:* In the case of multi-rooted teeth, especially mandibular molars, sectioning the tooth into individual roots prevents excessive force application. Each root is then carefully mobilised and removed along its path of withdrawal, minimising socket trauma.
- ✓ *Avoiding forceps compression:* Excessive or uncontrolled use of forceps can fracture the cortical plate. Instead, a combination of elevation,

sectioning, and controlled forceps pressure directed apically rather than laterally should be employed.

- ✓ *Soft tissue handling:* The mucogingival complex should be preserved with care. Incisions or flap elevations should be minimal, as disruption of the periosteum can compromise blood supply and lead to increased resorption.
- A meticulous extraction technique sets the stage for successful socket preservation. Trauma or bone loss during this phase can severely compromise subsequent grafting efforts.

3. ***Socket Grafting -***

- Socket grafting is the deliberate placement of bone substitute material into an extraction socket to preserve alveolar bone volume.
- This technique not only reduces dimensional changes but also supports the formation of new bone through ***osteoconduction, osteoinduction, or osteogenesis.***
- Types of Grafting Materials:
 - ✓ *Autografts:* Bone harvested from the patient—typically intraoral sources such as the mandibular symphysis or ramus. These grafts have osteogenic, osteoinductive, and osteoconductive properties. However, donor site morbidity and limited volume make them less practical for routine socket grafting.
 - ✓ *Allografts:* Sourced from human donors (cadaveric), these include freeze-dried bone allograft (FDBA) and demineralised freeze-dried bone allograft (DFDBA). FDBA provides a scaffold for bone growth, while DFDBA contains BMPs that can induce new bone formation.
 - ✓ *Xenografts:* These are derived from animal sources, usually bovine, and are processed to remove organic components, leaving a mineral matrix. They are osteoconductive and have slow resorption rates, making them ideal for maintaining space over time.
 - ✓ *Alloplasts:* Synthetic materials such as beta-tricalcium phosphate (β -TCP), hydroxyapatite (HA), and bioactive glass. These are biocompatible and offer predictable scaffolding, though integration rates vary.
- ***Technique of Socket Grafting -***
 - ✓ *Debridement:* The socket is thoroughly degranulated and irrigated to remove remnants of the periodontal ligament and inflammatory tissue.

- ✓ *Graft placement:* The material is compacted gently into the socket to fill the void without excessive pressure, which can impair vascular infiltration.
 - ✓ *Stabilisation:* The graft is often covered with a collagen sponge or membrane to contain the particles and prevent soft tissue ingrowth.
 - ✓ *Suturing:* The site is closed using interrupted or cross-mattress sutures. Primary closure is not always necessary, depending on the graft type and use of membranes.
 - ✓ Properly executed, socket grafting maintains ridge dimensions and supports early or delayed implant placement.
4. ***Use of Barrier Membranes -***
- Barrier membranes are employed in **Guided Bone Regeneration (GBR)** to segregate the grafted site from soft tissue intrusion.
 - Their purpose is to allow time for osteogenic cells to repopulate the graft area without interference from the faster-migrating epithelial and fibroblastic cells.
 - ***Types of Barrier Membranes -***
 - ✓ *Resorbable Membranes:* Usually composed of collagen, these degrade naturally over weeks to months. They do not require a second surgery for removal and are suitable for small- to moderate-sized defects.
 - ✓ *Non-Resorbable Membranes:* Made from materials such as expanded polytetrafluoroethylene (ePTFE), these provide superior space maintenance but require surgical retrieval. Titanium-reinforced membranes are used when mechanical strength is needed, such as in vertical augmentation.
 - Membranes must be trimmed to size and shaped to fit the extraction socket precisely. Improper adaptation or exposure can lead to infection, graft failure, or soft tissue dehiscence.
5. ***Biologics and Growth Factors -***
- Biologics have revolutionised the field of **Regenerative Dentistry** by introducing agents that modulate healing at the cellular level.
 - These substances can be used independently or in conjunction with bone grafts and membranes to enhance socket preservation.
 - ✓ *Platelet-Rich Plasma (PRP) and Platelet-Rich Fibrin (PRF):* Derived from the patient's own blood, these concentrate growth factors like PDGF, TGF- β , and VEGF. They promote angiogenesis, fibroblast

proliferation, and epithelial migration, thereby accelerating both soft and hard tissue healing.

- ✓ *Bone Morphogenetic Proteins (BMPs)*: These are potent osteoinductive cytokines that stimulate mesenchymal cells to differentiate into osteoblasts. Recombinant BMP-2 and BMP-7 have shown success in alveolar ridge preservation but are cost-prohibitive in routine practice.
- ✓ *Enamel Matrix Derivatives (EMD)*: Proteins such as amelogenin are known to facilitate periodontal regeneration and are sometimes used in conjunction with socket grafting.
- Biologic agents offer particular advantage in compromised patients or in sockets with significant bony defects.

6. **Socket Seal Surgery -**

- Socket seal surgery refers to the technique of sealing the socket opening with a soft tissue graft or biomaterial following bone graft placement.
- The goal is to maintain a closed, protected environment for graft maturation.
- ✓ *Collagen plug or sponge*: A resorbable collagen dressing can be shaped to fill the coronal part of the socket, helping to contain the graft and support clot formation.
- ✓ *Connective tissue grafts*: Harvested from the palate or tuberosity, these provide superior soft tissue integration and reduce the risk of membrane exposure.
- ✓ *Advantages*: This technique avoids the need for flap elevation and preserves the native mucogingival junction, which is particularly critical in the aesthetic zone.
- ✓ Socket seal surgery is most beneficial in **anterior extractions** or in patients with high aesthetic demands.

7. **Ridge Preservation in the Aesthetic Zone -**

- The anterior maxilla presents unique challenges for socket preservation due to the thinness of the facial plate and the high visibility of the region.
- ✓ *Preservation of labial plate*: The buccal bone is often less than 1 mm thick and easily resorbed. Even slight trauma during extraction can lead to collapse of the overlying gingival tissues.
- ✓ *Immediate grafting and sealing*: Socket grafting with xenografts or a mixture of allograft and autograft, combined with collagen membrane and socket seal, is ideal. PRF can be added to enhance soft tissue healing.

- ✓ *Temporary prosthesis:* Provisionals such as ovate pontics or clear retainers can help support the soft tissue contour during healing, preventing aesthetic deformities.
- ✓ Clinicians must be precise and conservative when extracting and grafting in the aesthetic zone to ensure predictable long-term results.

8. *Timing for Implant Placement -*

- The decision regarding when to place a dental implant after extraction depends largely on the socket's preservation status and the integrity of surrounding tissues.
- ✓ *Immediate placement:* Implant is placed in the fresh extraction socket. Suitable when the buccal bone is intact and adequate primary stability can be achieved. Often combined with simultaneous grafting.
- ✓ *Early placement:* Occurs after 4–8 weeks, allowing initial soft tissue healing while minimising bone resorption.
- ✓ *Delayed placement:* Typically done after 3–6 months, this approach is common when socket preservation has been performed. By this time, the graft has matured, and sufficient bone is present for predictable implant stability.
- ✓ Socket preservation improves the feasibility of each of these timelines, especially in areas where bone resorption would have otherwise compromised implant placement.

9. *Limitations and Contraindications -*

- While socket preservation offers numerous benefits, it is not universally applicable.
- Proper case selection, informed consent, and tailored surgical planning are critical to the success of socket preservation efforts.
- ✓ *Active infection:* Sites with purulent discharge, necrotic bone, or untreated periapical pathology should be allowed to heal first before grafting.
- ✓ *Severely damaged sockets:* In cases of extensive buccal wall loss, socket preservation alone may not suffice; guided bone regeneration or staged augmentation may be required.
- ✓ *Patient factors:* Smokers, uncontrolled diabetics, or individuals with poor oral hygiene may not be ideal candidates due to impaired healing or high risk of graft failure.

- ✓ *Cost and compliance:* Grafting materials and membranes can be expensive, and patient willingness to undergo additional procedures must be considered.

Rehabilitation of the Extraction Socket

- Rehabilitation of the extraction socket refers to the suite of interventions aimed at restoring both form and function to the site of a lost tooth.
- While socket preservation focuses on maintaining the ridge immediately after extraction, rehabilitation addresses the longer-term goal of replacing the missing tooth or teeth—functionally, aesthetically, and structurally—through prosthetic or implant-based means.
- A well-executed rehabilitation plan not only restores mastication and speech but also prevents the cascade of complications associated with *edentulism*, including supraeruption of opposing teeth, drifting of adjacent teeth, and progressive alveolar ridge resorption.
- Thus, ***rehabilitation is not a cosmetic adjunct but a clinical necessity integral to comprehensive dental and maxillofacial care.***

1. Objectives of Socket Rehabilitation -

- The goals of rehabilitating the extraction site go far beyond tooth replacement.
- Each intervention must strive to achieve the following:
 - ✓ *Restoration of function:* Including chewing efficiency, phonetics, and occlusal stability.
 - ✓ *Preservation of ridge architecture:* Especially in the aesthetic zone, where soft tissue contours are paramount.
 - ✓ *Stabilisation of adjacent and opposing teeth:* Preventing migration, tipping, or supraeruption.
 - ✓ *Psychological and social well-being:* Tooth loss can significantly affect a patient's self-esteem, speech, and social interactions.
 - ✓ *Long-term sustainability:* The chosen modality should integrate with the patient's systemic health, oral hygiene ability, and economic resources.
- These goals are achieved through a careful assessment of patient needs, site-specific factors, and available technologies.

2. Clinical Assessment and Timing -

- Before any rehabilitation can commence, a thorough clinical and radiographic evaluation is critical. This includes:

- ✓ *Intra-oral examination:* Assessing the condition of soft tissues, the integrity of the alveolar ridge, keratinised gingiva, and the presence of any pathological signs.
- ✓ *Radiographic Imaging:* Panoramic X-rays, periapical radiographs, and more importantly, Cone Beam Computed Tomography (CBCT) are used to assess bone volume, density, proximity to anatomical structures like maxillary sinus or inferior alveolar nerve, and any hidden pathology.
- ✓ *Occlusal Analysis:* Determining inter-arch space, occlusal forces, and functional demands.
- ✓ *Medical History Review:* To identify systemic conditions that may influence healing or long-term prosthetic use.
- ***Timing of Rehabilitation*** is also critical:
- ✓ *Immediate Rehabilitation* (within days of extraction) is done in cases of immediate implant placement or when temporaries are fabricated.
- ✓ *Early Rehabilitation* (4–8 weeks) is possible if soft tissue healing is sufficient but full bone maturity is not yet attained.
- ✓ *Delayed Rehabilitation* (3–6 months) is appropriate when socket preservation was performed or if grafting was necessary, allowing time for complete osseointegration or prosthetic planning.
- 3. ***Prosthetic Options for Socket Rehabilitation -***
 - The primary methods for replacing missing teeth post-extraction include removable prostheses, fixed partial dentures, and dental implants.
 - The choice depends on anatomical, functional, economic, and patient-related factors.
- ❖ ***Removable Partial Dentures (RPDs)***
 - ✓ *Advantages:* Cost-effective and non-invasive, suitable for patients with multiple missing teeth or compromised bone where implant placement is not feasible, can serve as interim prostheses during healing phases.
 - ✓ *Limitations:* Less aesthetic and less stable than fixed options, may accelerate residual ridge resorption due to pressure on soft tissues, can impair taste and phonetics due to palatal coverage.
 - ✓ *Clinical considerations:* RPDs must be designed to distribute occlusal forces evenly and avoid undue pressure on the ridge. Use of flexible base materials or metal frameworks can improve patient comfort and functionality. Frequent relining may be needed due to ongoing post-extraction resorption.

❖ ***Fixed Partial Dentures (FPDs) or Bridges***

- ✓ *Advantages:* Provides excellent aesthetics and function, no palatal or lingual coverage—more comfortable for the patient, rapid rehabilitation possible once adjacent abutment teeth are prepared.
- ✓ *Limitations:* Requires preparation of adjacent healthy teeth, potentially compromising their structure and vitality. Not feasible when abutments are weak or missing. Does not prevent alveolar bone loss at the edentulous site.
- ✓ *Clinical considerations:* Best suited for short edentulous spans with strong adjacent teeth. Porcelain-fused-to-metal or all-ceramic options can be tailored to the aesthetic needs of the patient. Careful occlusal planning is essential to avoid overloading abutments.

❖ ***Dental Implants***

- Implant-supported rehabilitation is considered the **gold standard** for socket rehabilitation today, as it most closely mimics natural dentition in function, aesthetics, and long-term outcomes.
- ✓ *Advantages:* Osseointegration prevents bone resorption by maintaining mechanical load on the alveolus. Adjacent teeth are preserved. Superior aesthetic outcomes, especially in the anterior maxilla. High success rates (>95% over 10 years) with proper case selection.
- ✓ *Limitations:* Requires adequate bone volume and quality. Cost-intensive. Healing time and multiple visits may be needed.
- ✓ *Clinical considerations:* Can be placed immediately into the extraction socket or after healing. Implant placement requires CBCT planning and surgical guides for precision. Surface treatments (e.g., SLA, TiUnite) and platform-switching designs enhance stability.

4. ***Implant Timing in Socket Rehabilitation -***

- The decision on when to place an implant in a post-extraction site impacts not only healing but also aesthetics and functional outcomes:
- ✓ *Immediate implant placement:* Performed at the time of extraction. Benefits include reduced treatment time, fewer surgical sessions, and preservation of alveolar architecture. However, it requires ideal socket conditions—intact walls, absence of infection, and sufficient bone volume for primary stability.
- ✓ *Early placement:* Occurs 4–8 weeks after extraction. Allows for soft tissue healing while preserving alveolar contours. Beneficial in cases of mild infection or partial wall loss.

- ✓ *Delayed placement:* Done after 3–6 months. Allows full bone healing but may result in more ridge resorption unless preservation procedures were performed. Ideal when substantial grafting or socket regeneration was required.
- ✓ *Staged or late placement:* Reserved for cases where initial socket healing failed or where significant augmentation (e.g., sinus lift) is needed.
- 5. ***Soft Tissue Management in Rehabilitation -***
 - Even if bone volume is restored, the soft tissue envelope must be carefully managed for a successful prosthetic outcome. This includes:
 - ✓ *Width of Keratinised Tissue:* A minimum of 2 mm of attached gingiva around implants or pontics is ideal for maintaining hygiene and preventing mucositis.
 - ✓ *Papilla Preservation and Reconstruction:* Loss of interdental papillae can result in unsightly "**black triangles**" especially in the aesthetic zone. Techniques such as ovate pontics or papilla preservation flaps can mitigate this.
 - ✓ *Gingival Contouring:* Procedures like gingivoplasty or use of soft tissue grafts may be needed to restore harmonious gingival architecture.
 - ✓ *Provisionalisation:* Temporary crowns with ideal emergence profiles can help sculpt soft tissues over time before placing the final prosthesis.
 - ✓ Soft tissue management is as crucial as hard tissue preparation in achieving long-term aesthetic success.
- 6. ***Maintenance and Long-Term Care -***
 - After socket rehabilitation—particularly in implant-supported restorations—maintenance protocols are critical for longevity.
 - ✓ *Oral Hygiene Instruction:* Patients must be educated on cleaning techniques around prostheses, abutments, and implants. Tools such as interdental brushes, floss threaders, and water flossers may be required.
 - ✓ *Professional cleaning:* Regular dental visits (every 3–6 months) are necessary for biofilm removal and monitoring of peri-implant tissues.
 - ✓ *Occlusal adjustments:* Minor shifts in bite over time can lead to undue stress on restorations. Periodic checks and occlusal balancing are essential.
 - ✓ *Radiographic evaluation:* Annual radiographs are advised for implants to check for crestal bone loss or early signs of peri-implantitis.

- ✓ *Management of complications:* These may include soft tissue inflammation, screw loosening, prosthesis fracture, or esthetic issues—all of which require timely intervention.
- 7. *Psychological and Functional Impact -***
 - Successful rehabilitation significantly enhances the patient's quality of life.
 - Socket rehabilitation serves both medical and psychosocial roles in holistic patient care.
 - ✓ *Psychological well-being:* Restoration of teeth improves self-confidence, social acceptance, and psychological health, especially in younger patients and those in public-facing professions.
 - ✓ *Nutritional benefits:* With functional teeth, patients regain the ability to chew effectively, contributing to better digestion and dietary choices.
 - ✓ *Speech Restoration:* Missing anterior teeth can cause lisping or phonetic difficulties, especially with sibilants. Rehabilitation corrects these issues.

Special Considerations in the Edentulous and Medically Compromised Patient

- ✓ *Complete Edentulism:* Requires careful ridge mapping, consideration of vertical dimension, and possibly implant-supported over dentures for retention.
- ✓ *Medically Compromised Patients:* Diabetes, osteoporosis, or radiotherapy history can affect healing and bone turnover. These patients may need special protocols such as antibiotic prophylaxis, modified surgical approaches, or alternative prosthetic plans.
- ✓ *Geriatric Patients:* Bone density, dexterity for hygiene, and prosthetic tolerance must be carefully evaluated to ensure compliance and comfort.
- Rehabilitation must always be customised to the unique circumstances and systemic status of the patient.
- Rehabilitation of the extraction socket is not an isolated step but the culmination of a series of well-integrated surgical, prosthetic, and biological strategies aimed at restoring oral health, function, and aesthetics.
- Whether achieved through removable dentures, fixed prostheses, or implants, success depends on a thorough clinical assessment, precise execution, and long-term maintenance.

- Importantly, rehabilitation cannot be seen in isolation—it begins with the extraction itself and is influenced by decisions made at every stage, including socket preservation.
- A multidisciplinary, patient-centric approach remains the key to predictable and satisfying outcomes.

Points To Remember

- Exodontia, or tooth extraction, remains a fundamental procedure in dental practice with wide-ranging indications from caries and periodontal disease to orthodontic and prosthetic needs. A comprehensive understanding of the reasons for extraction, along with meticulous pre-extraction evaluation, forms the cornerstone of safe and effective treatment. Post-extraction considerations, including management of the extraction site and prevention of complications, are crucial to ensure optimal healing.
- Medical precautions tailored to the patient's systemic health minimize perioperative risks, while preservation of the extraction socket has emerged as a vital technique to mitigate alveolar ridge resorption, thereby facilitating future restorative procedures. The final stage of rehabilitation integrates surgical, prosthetic, and patient-centred approaches, aiming to restore both function and esthetics.
- The multidisciplinary nature of exodontia requires that clinicians combine sound biological knowledge, surgical skill, and individualized patient care. Advances in biomaterials, tissue engineering, and digital technologies continue to enhance outcomes and patient satisfaction. This comprehensive approach ensures that tooth extraction, beyond being a simple removal, becomes a gateway to holistic oral rehabilitation and improved quality of life.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Cawood, J. I., & Howell, R. A. (1988). A classification of the edentulous jaws. *International Journal of Oral and Maxillofacial Surgery*, 17(4), 232–236. [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0901-5027\(88\)80043-0](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0901-5027(88)80043-0)
2. Carlsson, G. E. (1990). Critical review of some dogmas in prosthodontics. *Journal of Prosthetic Dentistry*, 64(4), 414–417. [https://doi.org/10.1016/0022-3913\(90\)90107-3](https://doi.org/10.1016/0022-3913(90)90107-3)

3. Jung, R. E., Zembic, A., Pjetursson, B. E., Zwahlen, M., & Thoma, D. S. (2012). Systematic review of the survival rate and incidence of biological, technical, and aesthetic complications of single crowns on implants reported in longitudinal studies with a mean follow-up of 5 years. *Clinical Oral Implants Research*, 23(Suppl 6), 2–21. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-0501.2012.02547>
4. Linden, G. J., & Mullally, B. H. (1998). Periodontal abscesses: a review. *Journal of Clinical Periodontology*, 25(9), 573–584. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-051X.1998.tb02505.x>
5. Pjetursson, B. E., Lang, N. P., Zwahlen, M., & Sailer, I. (2007). A systematic review of the survival and complication rates of implant-supported fixed dental prostheses (FDPs) after a mean observation period of at least 5 years. *Clinical Oral Implants Research*, 18(3), 73–85. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-0501.2007.01449.x>
6. Schropp, L., Wenzel, A., Kostopoulos, L., & Karring, T. (2003). Bone healing and soft tissue contour changes following single-tooth extraction: a clinical and radiographic 12-month prospective study. *International Journal of Periodontics & Restorative Dentistry*, 23(4), 313–323.
7. Schroeder, H. E., Van der Ouderaa, F., Listgarten, M. A., & Gerson, S. (1976). The biology of connective tissue and epithelium at the dentogingival junction. *Journal of Periodontal Research*, 11(Suppl 12), 39–58. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-0765.1976.tb00779.x>
8. Smiler, D. G., Soltan, M. A., & James, R. A. (1997). Immediate implant placement and provisionalization of anterior single implants. *The Journal of Oral Implantology*, 23(3), 154–163.
9. Tarnow, D. P., Cho, S. C., & Wallace, S. S. (2000). The effect of interimplant distance on the height of interimplant bone crest. *Journal of Periodontology*, 71(4), 546–549. <https://doi.org/10.1902/jop.2000.71.4.546>
10. Van der Weijden, F., Dell'Acqua, F., & Slot, D. E. (2009). Alveolar bone dimensional changes of post-extraction sockets in humans: a systematic review. *Journal of Clinical Periodontology*, 36(12), 1048–1058. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-051X.2009.01482.x>
11. Wang, H. L., & Boyapati, L. (2006). "PASS" principles for predictable bone regeneration. *Implant Dentistry*, 15(1), 8–17. <https://doi.org/10.1097/01.id.0000194363.47731.6a>

12. Zimmermann, G., & Nkenke, E. (2014). Approaches to the management of the edentulous alveolar ridge: alveolar ridge preservation and reconstruction. *Journal of Oral and Maxillofacial Surgery*, 72(9), 1685–1695. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.joms.2014.03.020>
13. Zuhr, O., Hurzeler, M., Schupbach, P., & Hämmerle, C. H. (2007). Soft tissue management in implant therapy: prosthetically guided reconstruction of the gingival margin. *Practical Procedures & Aesthetic Dentistry*, 19(7), 391–398.
14. American Academy of Periodontology. (2015). Peri-implant mucositis and peri-implantitis: a current understanding of their diagnoses and clinical implications. Chicago, IL: American Academy of Periodontology.
15. Schropp, L., & Isidor, F. (2008). Ridge preservation following tooth extraction. *The International Journal of Periodontics & Restorative Dentistry*, 28(3), 223–231.
16. Hupp JR, Ellis E, Tucker MR. *Contemporary Oral and Maxillofacial Surgery*. 7th ed. Elsevier; 2019.
17. Peterson LJ, Ellis E, Hupp JR, Tucker MR. *Principles of Oral and Maxillofacial Surgery*. 2nd ed. BC Decker; 2004.
18. Misch CE. *Dental Implant Prosthetics*. 2nd ed. Elsevier Mosby; 2015.
19. Fonseca RJ. *Oral and Maxillofacial Surgery*. 3rd ed. Elsevier; 2017.
20. Pynn BR, Sands TD. "Tooth extraction: A practical guide for the general dentist." *J Can Dent Assoc*. 2012; 78:c91.

CHAPTER 7

ORTHODONTIC DENTAL EXTRACTION



Prof Dr A Pavithranand

MDS, FDSRCS (England)

Professor and Head of Department

Orthodontics and Dentofacial Orthopaedics

Indira Gandhi Institute of Dental Sciences

Sri Balaji Vidyapeeth Deemed University

Union Territory of Pondicherry (Puducherry)

-
- **Therapeutic Extractions** in Orthodontics traditionally involves the extraction of the bicusps. The choice of the tooth to be extracted is not always an easy one.
 - Various model analyses, cephalometric analyses in addition to the clinical examination are to be done meticulously before arriving at a conclusion.
 - In the modern-day practice, extractions are generally governed by the ethnicity of the population. The most common reason for the need of extractions during orthodontic treatment are correction of crowding and proclination of teeth. Extractions in orthodontics has been a long-debated treatment option having a sudden surge in periods with extraction or non-extraction approach by its proponents.
 - **Edward H. Angle**, the *father of modern Orthodontics*, was biased towards a non-extraction plan as he considered that “*the Creator intended we should have the full number of teeth, and that we as orthodontists, can succeed best only by preserving the full complement of teeth*”.

- He had treated even severely crowded bimaxillary protrusion cases without permanent teeth extractions by expanding the dental arches significantly often with questionable esthetic finish.
- **Raymond Begg** on the other hand, based on his study of the aboriginal population recommended extraction of the premolars in all cases, again resulting unfavourable esthetics in most of the cases.
- There has been a marked change in the choice of the teeth to be extracted, with the change in the approach of treatment from dentition first to soft-tissue based approach, stressing importance to the stability of the post-treatment results.

Need for Extraction

- Tooth size discrepancy and arch length discrepancies are the primary reason for the occurrence of crowding in a dental arch. There is evidence that due to lack of tooth wear, substantial reduction in the size of the teeth, jaws and hence face as a whole there is as much as 30% of increase in the total tooth material
- In order to accommodate the anterior teeth into a well aligned and stable position, it often necessitates the removal of tooth material either in the form of interproximal reduction or extraction of certain teeth. The latter being more favoured in moderate to severe crowding cases.
- Apart from crowding, proclination of the anterior teeth also forms an important criterion for the decision to extract teeth. Patients with *bimaxillary dentoalveolar protrusion* and *Class II division 1 malocclusion* present to the orthodontist to address their concern about their appearance, these individuals are also more prone to injury of the upper incisors due to the increased proclination. To improve facial esthetics in both frontal and lateral profile, extraction of the premolars is warranted.
- The *space that is created by the extraction of teeth* is utilized to unravel the crowding of the dental arches, or to correct the position of the anterior teeth in the vertical and sagittal plane to get a more harmonious and pleasing smile.
- As mentioned earlier, a detailed clinical examination along with the knowledge of the etiology of the presenting malocclusion is necessary before deciding the tooth/teeth to be extracted.

- It is very important to assess the presence, development and prognosis of the remaining teeth, before planning for extractions. Apart from the above, other factors that needs to be assessed are; the position of teeth in the dental arch, amount of space required, the incisor relationship and the anchorage requirement based on the aims of the treatment.
- ***Determining the optimal teeth for extraction is a multifactorial decision-making process that necessitates a thorough understanding of the biomechanical, esthetic, and functional objectives of the overall treatment plan.*** The most commonly extracted teeth during orthodontic treatment remains the premolars and the least desirable one being the upper incisors.

Extraction of Premolars

- As mentioned earlier, ***premolars*** are the preferred teeth of extraction in most cases. Choosing the right premolar, 1st or 2nd is dependent on proper assessment of the patient taking into consideration both the soft tissue drape and the underlying hard tissues (skeletal and dental) components. This also facilitates the ideal outcome of the treatment with minimal side effects.
- 1st premolars offer the maximum space utilization for the correction of crowding and proclination as they are located close to the area of concern. These teeth are also an ideal choice when the anchorage requirement is maximum, i.e., mesial movement of the posterior teeth is not desirable.
- Patients with severe proclination greatly benefit from extraction of the 1st premolar as upon retraction of the anterior teeth the lips also get retracted, having a profound impact on the facial profile. The extent of upper lip retraction ranges from 0.5 mm to 0.75 mm for every 1 mm retraction of the upper anteriors and between 0.6 mm to 0.78 mm of lower lip retraction during uprighting or retraction of the lower anteriors.
- Thereby, the 1st premolars are preferred when 75% or more of the extraction space is needed for the correction of proclination or crowding.
- The next commonly extracted teeth are the ***second premolars***, which are preferred in cases of mild discrepancies, especially if the facial

appearance is pleasing. Only 50% or less of the extraction space is available for the unravelling of the anterior discrepancy when the 2nd premolars are extracted.

- Hence, they are an ideal choice in cases requiring moderate to minimum anchorage requirements. This is also particularly helpful in the correction of molar relationship.
- Patients exhibiting Class II molar relation benefit from extraction of lower 2nd premolars and allowing the lower molars to be *mesialised* during the treatment to established to a Class I. The same helps correction of a Class III molar, where the upper 2nd premolar is extracted.

Extraction of Molars

- Extraction of *permanent 1st molars* are undertaken only if the prognosis is poor.
- The permanent first molars being the earliest permanent teeth to erupt are prone to caries in individuals with poor oral hygiene maintenance. This often leads to loss of tooth structure and may also result in endodontic treatment. When two or more of the first permanent molars have poor prognosis, it is often advisable to extract all the four permanent 1st molars, a procedure often referred to as *Wilkinson's extraction*.
- Timing of extraction of mandibular first molars is very crucial, when done prior to the eruption of the lower second molars. Maxillary molars usually drift mesial spontaneously and hence, the timing is less critical.
- If spontaneous closure of the extraction space is planned then it should be timed in such a way that the removal of the lower molar is done only if:
 - ✓ the second molar has developed up to the bifurcation area,
 - ✓ the angulation between the long axes of the first and second molars are between 15° and 30°, and
 - ✓ the developing second molar is overlapping the root of the first molar.
- Treatment involving *camouflaging open-bite situations* can be benefitted at times with the extraction of 1st molars by allowing the

mesial movement of the posterior teeth leading to an autorotation of the mandible thereby closing the open bite.

- ***Permanent second or third molar extractions*** are usually performed when there is a need for distal movement of the posterior teeth, as the space that is obtained with the extraction of the molars cannot be utilized for the correction of any anterior discrepancy.
- Individuals with relapse, who have undergone orthodontic treatment involving extractions of premolars are best suited for this option. Since space is often required to correct the crowding or proclination, and further extraction of premolars is not possible, the 2nd or 3rd molars can be extracted and the entire arch can be *distalised* to correct the discrepancy.
- The ***lower third molars*** can be extracted in individuals with mild skeletal Class III and the entire arch can be moved distally to camouflage the underlying skeletal discrepancy.
- ***An earlier concept was the prophylactic extraction of the 3rd molars***, especially the lower ones, in order to prevent the late mandibular anterior crowding. This has been refuted since there was no difference in the occurrence in the development of mandibular anterior crowding whether extractions of the lower 3rd molars were performed or not.
- ***Compensatory Extractions***, involves extraction of the opposing tooth, in order to preserve the buccal occlusion, should be attempted only if there is an inevitable loss of the lower molars, as supra-eruption of the upper molars will occur, which will prevent the mesial drifting of the lower 2nd molar.
- While on the other hand if there is loss of upper molar, the lower molars do not supra-erupt to the extent of the upper molars and hence compensatory extractions are not necessary.
- The lower molar extraction should best be avoided as a good spontaneous correction would be difficult to achieve.
- ***Balancing Extractions***, on the other hand is the extraction of the corresponding tooth on the contralateral side to prevent the drifting of teeth unilaterally leading to a midline shift. These are not usually carried out for molars as they have little effect on the anterior symmetry.

Extraction of Canines or Incisors

- Canines and incisors are seldom extracted unless they are impacted and have a poor prognosis, in terms of presence of any dilacerations, unfavourable angulations.
- It is best extracted if the teeth on the either side of the impacted tooth are having a good proximal contact.
- Lower incisor extraction is indicated in individuals with periodontally compromised incisor, a Bolton's ratio exhibiting a lower anterior excess, in certain cases with mild lower anterior crowding with a good buccal occlusion. They are also preferred in cases of mild skeletal Class III patients, where the space is utilized to correct the incisor relation.

Timing of Extraction

- All restorative procedures are to be completed before the start of treatment. One cannot overemphasize this crucial step as at times, when extractions have been completed and the treatment is initiated, a tooth may require endodontic treatment and it could lead to extraction at a later time period.
- If the assessment was done previously, it would be wiser to extract the tooth with heavy restorations or with a questionable prognosis than to sacrifice a healthy tooth. Although, the treatment can get prolonged due to change in the extraction plan, it is still worth saving a healthy tooth.
- ***Conventional treatment mechanics*** advocates the extraction of the teeth prior to the start of the treatment. This can prevent accidental breakage of the attachments once the appliance has been bonded and possible ingestion or aspiration of the same.
- It should be noted that there should not be a large time interval between extractions and also the commencement of the treatment as such. Too large an interval can lead to reorganising/advanced healing of the socket which can lead to a delayed response to tooth movement.
- During treatment of patients with bimaxillary dentoalveolar protrusion or with well aligned arches, extractions can be delayed. In such situations extracting the teeth just before retraction of the

anterior teeth can lead to faster tooth movement and has a potential to reduce the treatment duration.

- It is also to be noted that extraction of teeth that have been subjected to orthodontic forces are easier to extract, this is due to the widening of the PDL space and the ongoing remodelling process.

Management of Atrophic Edentulous Space

- Instances where there were early loss of the permanent molars or congenital absence of lateral incisors will lead to altered inclination angulation of the adjacent teeth, especially in the posterior segment.
- Patients with such conditions when requiring Orthodontic treatment have an option of either closure of the existing space or re-open the space for prosthetic rehabilitation. A few advantages of **space closure** include:
 1. Satisfaction of patient from esthetic and functional aspects
 2. Lesser chances for a prolonged professional maintenance
 3. Patients present with better periodontal health in comparison to space opening and prosthetic rehabilitation.
- Patients who have a long-standing edentulous space pose a great challenge during orthodontic space closure, as there is a reduced alveolar bone thickness both *bucco-lingually* and *occluso-gingivally*. This narrowing of the edentulous space often prevent space from closing orthodontically.
- In such cases, it is advisable to prosthetically restore the missing tooth rather than attempting to close the space.
- If orthodontic space closure has been considered as an option, the following adjunctive procedures can be used to facilitate the space closure:
 1. Alveolar ridge split augmentation
 2. Guided bone regeneration of the edentulous region
 3. Mini-implant assisted orthodontic space closure

Precautions during Extraction

- Therapeutic extractions for Orthodontic treatment are to be carried out in an atraumatic manner. Care should be taken not to damage the buccal cortex, as this can lead to a permanent defect in the form of *clefting* even after space closure. It should also be done in a way so

as to avoid any root fracture, as this may require a surgical removal of the same.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Littlewood SJ, Mitchell L, Lewis BRK, Barber SK, Jenkins FR. An Introduction to Orthodontics. 5th ed. Oxford, United Kingdom: Oxford University Press; 2019.
2. Cobourne MT, Dibiase AT. Handbook of orthodontics. Edinburgh; New York: Elsevier; 2016.
3. Wahl N. Orthodontics in 3 millennia. Chapter 6: More early 20th-century appliances and the extraction controversy. *American Journal of Orthodontics and Dentofacial Orthopedics*. 2005 Dec;128(6):795–800.
4. Wahl N. Orthodontics in 3 millennia. Chapter 11: The golden age of orthodontics. *American Journal of Orthodontics and Dentofacial Orthopedics*. 2006 Oct;130(4):549–53.
5. Benson PE, Alshawy E, Fenton GD, Frawley T, Misra S, Ng T, et al. Extraction vs. nonextraction of premolars for orthodontic treatment: A scoping review examining the extent, range, and characteristics of the literature. *American Journal of Orthodontics and Dentofacial Orthopedics* 2023; 164:368-76.
6. Narendar R, Balakrishnan G, Kavin T, Venkataraman S, Altaf SK, Gokulanathan S. Incidence of Risk and Complications Associated with Orthodontic Therapeutic Extraction. *J Pharm Bioallied Sci*. 2017;9(Suppl 1): S201-S204. doi:10.4103/jpbs.JPBS_160_17
7. Konstantonis D, Vasileiou D, Papageorgiou SN, Eliades T. Soft tissue changes following extraction vs. nonextraction orthodontic fixed appliance treatment: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Eur J Oral Sci*. 2018;126(3):167-179. doi:10.1111/eos.12409
8. Araújo TM, Caldas LD. Tooth extractions in Orthodontics: first or second premolars. *Dental Press J Orthod*. 2019;24(3):88-98. Published 2019 Aug 1. doi:10.1590/2177-6709.24.3.088-098.bbo

CHAPTER 8

PERIODONTIC PRESERVATION & REHABILITATION OF THE EXTRACTION SOCKET



Dr. Balagangadharan Manovijay, MDS

Professor

Periodontology

Vinayaka Mission's Sankarachariyar Dental College

*Vinayaka Mission's Research Foundation
(Deemed To Be University)*

Salem, Tamil Nadu

-
- Periodontitis is a chronic inflammatory condition affecting the supporting structures of the tooth resulting in attachment loss and further tooth loss. It is a multifactorial disease initiated by bacteria and influenced by various systemic and environmental factors.
 - The ultimate goal of periodontal treatment is to restore a healthy and functional periodontium.
 - ***From the viewpoint of a periodontist, extracting teeth that are affected by periodontal issues is commonly considered when there is a significant likelihood of the tooth failing or when the surrounding periodontal tissues are severely compromised and unlikely to benefit from non-surgical periodontal treatment.***
 - Important factors that affect this decision include the degree of bone loss, tooth mobility, and the presence of furcation involvement.
 - Regarding tooth extractions, the clinical decision-making process made by general dentists and *Periodontologist* is influenced by the

level of periodontal disease, the level of oral hygiene of the patient and the level of the remaining alveolar bone

Factors Influencing Extraction Decisions

- The most frequently reported reasons to indicate the extraction of teeth with periodontitis are the presence of mobility, severity of attachment loss and radiographic bone loss greater than 50%, followed by socioeconomic and cultural aspects, prosthetic planning and furcation involvement .
- Reasons such as presence of extensive caries, possibility of systemic involvement due to periodontitis and periodontal-endodontic lesions were the least mentioned among the reasons for tooth extraction.

1. *Degree of Bone Loss -*

- Radiographic bone loss exceeding 50% is a crucial indicator for tooth extraction.

2. *Tooth Mobility -*

- Severe mobility (Class III or IV) suggests the supporting structures are compromised and may necessitate extraction.

3. *Furcation Involvement -*

- Furcation involvement, Class III or IV in particular can be challenging to manage and may lead to the need for extraction.

4. *Attachment Loss -*

- Significant loss of attachment ($CAL \geq 6mm$) and alveolar bone loss, greater than 1mm over a period of 5years suggest a reduced survival rate in comparison to teeth with minimal attachment loss.

Patient-Related Factors

1. *Systemic Health -*

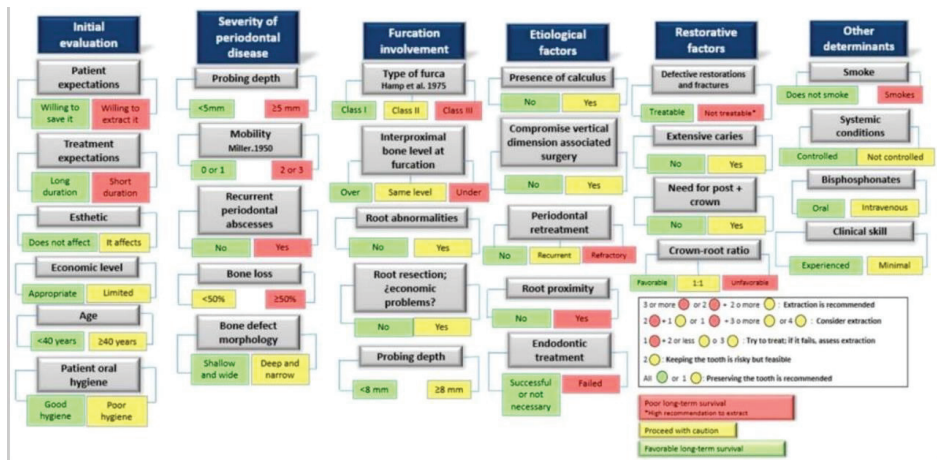
- Systemic conditions like diabetes ($HbA1c \geq 7\%$), smoking habits (Smoker ≥ 10 cig/day), and age can influence the success of periodontal treatment and may warrant extraction in certain cases.

2. *Motivation and Compliance -*

- A patient's motivation and commitment to maintaining good oral hygiene are crucial for the success of any periodontal treatment and may be considered when deciding on extraction

Pre Extraction Considerations

- In dealing with a tooth with an unfavourable prognosis, the practitioner should weigh the potential success of one treatment plan (extraction and prosthetic rehabilitation) with the other (periodontal therapy and supportive periodontal treatment).
- Patient needs should be of prime importance before planning for extraction. If preserving a periodontally compromised tooth jeopardizes the maintenance of other healthy teeth in the oral cavity then, it should be advised for extraction.
- Extraction of hopeless teeth before or after periodontal treatment depends on the treatment plan. If the hopeless tooth serves as posterior stops during implant placement, then it can be extracted during the placement of the implant.
- Tooth in the *anterior esthetic zone* can be extracted after periodontal surgery. Similarly in order to reduce the appointments, tooth can be extracted at the time of periodontal surgery.



Schematic diagram of the main factors that should guide decision-making to maintain or extract a tooth from a periodontal point of view. Based, with modifications made by the authors, on the schemes initially proposed by Avila, G. et al., 2009 [5]; Nunn, M.E. et al., 2012 [6].

Post-Extraction Considerations

- Following a tooth extraction, *alveolar ridge resorption* occurs. This phenomenon differs among individuals, specific locations, and between the maxilla and mandible.
- Complications that may arise post-extraction include loss of functionality, decrease in vertical height, reduction in horizontal width, inadequate bone for dental implants, and challenges with prosthodontics.
- Research indicates that the residual ridge tends to shrink more rapidly during the initial six months. After an extraction, the maxillary arch generally experiences more horizontal resorption along with vertical loss of bone compared to the mandible.
- To achieve favourable outcomes with implants, it is crucial to maintain the contours of both the bone and soft tissue as intact as possible.
- *Alveolar Ridge Preservation (ARP) is recognized as a Guided Bone Regeneration (GBR) method aimed at preventing ridge resorption following tooth extraction.*

Decision Tree for Preservation of Extraction Socket

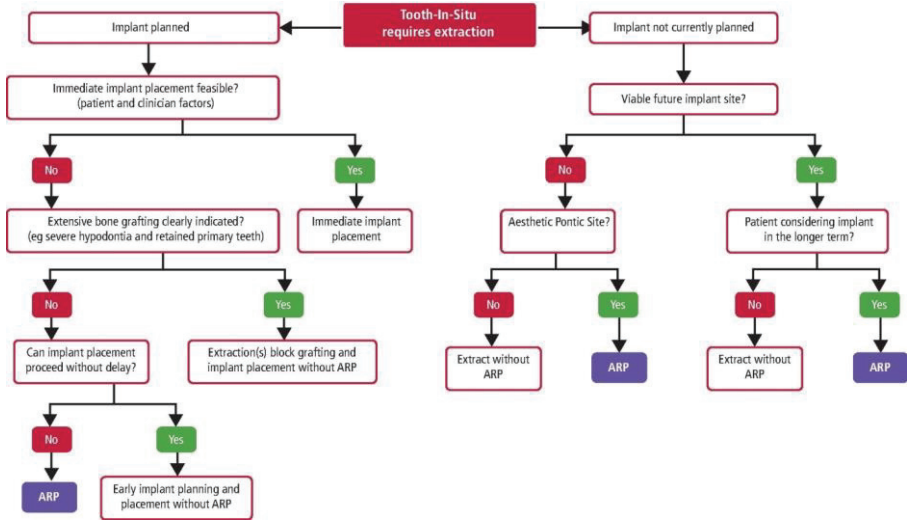
- ***The reasons for preserving an extraction socket are as follows -***
 - ✓ To decrease the loss of alveolar ridge volume following tooth extraction for implant-based restoration.
 - ✓ For immediate placement of an implant in fresh extraction sites with a one-wall defect that needs sufficient buccal cortical support.
 - ✓ To facilitate the healing of bone deficiencies that results from infection, injury, or traumatic extractions.
 - ✓ In anterior teeth with a buccal bone thickness of 2 mm or less.
 - ✓ At locations that are near vital anatomical structures, such as the maxillary sinus and mandibular canal.
- ***The reasons against socket preservation include -***
 - ✓ Medical issues that prevent the placement of implants.
 - ✓ Extraction sockets that exhibit bony lesions larger than 5 mm where an implant cannot be placed in the future.

- ✓ Not recommended when a molar root extends into the maxillary sinus.
- ✓ In instances of atrophy of the maxillary alveolar process, the projection of the nasal floor poses a risk of perforation.
- ***Preservation of extraction socket is broadly planned as two zones based on the location as esthetic anterior zone and non-esthetic posterior zone.***
- In esthetic zones, esthetic considerations are investigated such as facial soft-tissue deficiency, absence of buccal wall of extraction socket $\geq 50\%$, and horizontal bone loss ≥ 2 mm. Functional considerations are if primary stability cannot be achieved, at least ≤ 3 mm of bone to be present beyond apex of extraction socket and contact of implant and bony walls.
- In non-esthetic zones, the following esthetic considerations are checked like facial soft tissue deficiency surrounding extraction socket, absence of buccal wall of extraction socket, and horizontal bone loss ≥ 3 mm.
- Similarly, functional considerations are if primary stability cannot be achieved, at least ≤ 3 mm of bone to be present beyond apex of extraction socket and absence of septal bone⁹.

Indications and various reasons for extraction socket	Aesthetic Zone	Non aesthetic Zone
Aesthetic	Facial soft tissue deficiency Absence of buccal wall of extraction socket $\geq 50\%$ Horizontal bone loss ≥ 2 mm	Facial soft-tissue deficiency of extraction socket Absence of buccal wall Horizontal bone loss ≥ 3 mm
Functional If Primary stability cannot be achieved	Available bone beyond the apex of extraction socket ≤ 3 mm and absence of implant to bony walls contact.	Available bone beyond the apex of extraction socket ≤ 3 mm and absence of septal bone.

Clinical decision tree for extraction socket/augmentation
Socket preservation techniques: An overview with literature review

SRM Journal of Research in Dental Sciences 13 (3):115-120, Jul-Sep 2022.



Flow chart for decision making in Alveolar Ridge Preservation

Atraumatic Extractions

❖ *The Socket-Shield Technique and Immediate Implant Placement -*

- The ARP begins at the time of tooth extraction. The term “atraumatic extraction” is debatable because in all extraction techniques the alveolar bone is traumatized to some extent, which is why we consider it more appropriate to call it “minimally traumatic extractions,” which is achieved by applying traction forces directed along the longitudinal axis in an effort to break *Sharpey’s fibers* and achieve avulsion.
- This is possible in cases of conical roots without significant curvatures. Attempts to reduce the trauma of extraction include the use of specially designed instruments and special techniques.
- The *socket shield method*, also referred to as *socket shield therapy*, is a dental approach aimed at conserving the buccal (cheek-side) bone and soft tissues during immediate implant placement following tooth extraction.
- This technique involves deliberately leaving a portion of the tooth's buccal root intact within the extraction socket. The remaining root fragment acts as a "shield," aiding in the protection of the buccal bone and adjacent soft tissues from resorption, while maintaining the natural shape and contours of the alveolar ridge.

❖ **Purpose -**

- The main objective of the socket shield approach is to reduce bone and soft tissue loss following tooth extraction, especially on the buccal side of the alveolar ridge, which is vital for aesthetics and proper integration of the implant.

❖ **Procedure -**

- ✓ *Partial Extraction:* The tooth is removed partially, with the buccal root fragment left intentionally in the socket.
- ✓ *Shield Preparation:* The selected root fragment is modified and prepared to serve as a "shield" against the surrounding tissues.
- ✓ *Implant Placement:* An immediate implant is inserted either palatally (towards the upper jaw) or lingually in relation to the retained root fragment.

❖ **Benefits -**

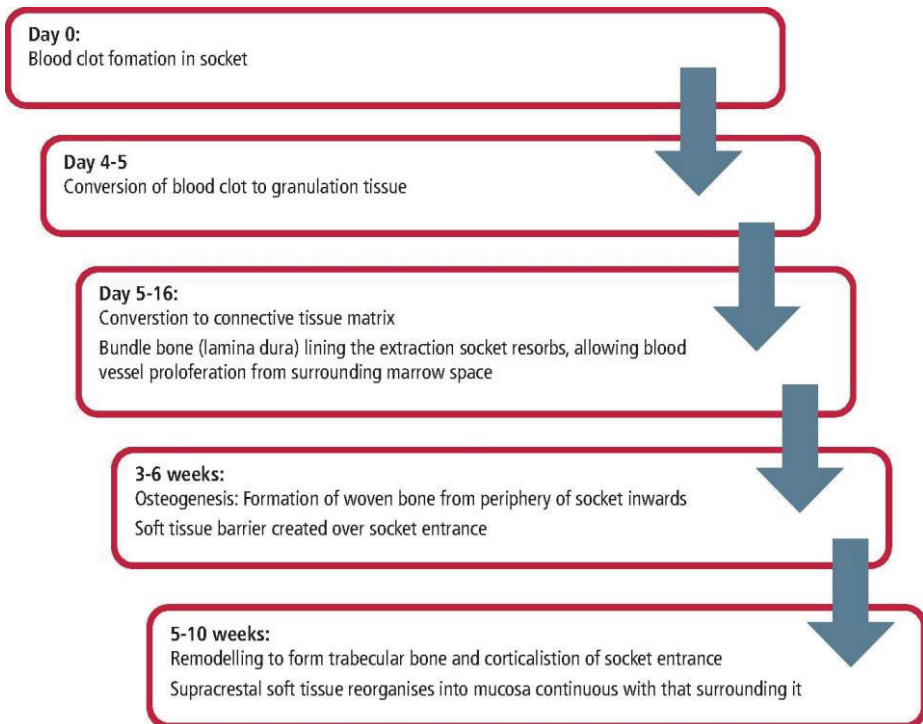
- ✓ *Bone Preservation:* The persisted root fragment aids in keeping the buccal bone plate intact, preventing major bone resorption.
- ✓ *Soft Tissue Preservation:* It also contributes to maintaining the natural form and contours of the soft tissues, including the gums, which is essential for achieving a natural appearance in restorations.
- ✓ *Esthetics:* By preserving the natural contours of the ridge, the socket shield approach can result in more favourable aesthetic results with implants, particularly for the anterior (front) teeth.
- ✓ *Reduced Grafting Needs:* In certain instances, it might minimize or even negate the necessity for bone grafting procedures, which can be time-intensive and expensive.

❖ **Considerations -**

- ✓ *Root Fragment Preparation:* Shaping the root fragment for the shield can be complex and demands careful surgical skill.
- ✓ *Long-term Follow-up:* Although studies have shown encouraging outcomes, more long-term follow-up studies are required to comprehensively evaluate the technique's stability and efficacy over time.
- ✓ *Potential Complications:* One possible complication is the internal exposure of the shield fragment, which can be addressed through appropriate clinical methods.

Alveolar Ridge Changes Following Tooth Extraction

- Granulation tissue develops after a blood clot forms during extraction.
- After that, mineralization takes place, creating braided bone that eventually transforms into lamellar bone. The majority of bone changes after tooth extraction take place in the first three months, however they can last for several months. This procedure is summarized in the following figure.
- Regardless of whether an implant is positioned right away or not, the bundle bone, also referred to as the *lamina dura*, which lines the periodontal ligament around a tooth, is always resorbed following tooth extraction.
- By four weeks following extraction, it has completely reabsorbed and has a thickness of 0.2–0.5 mm.

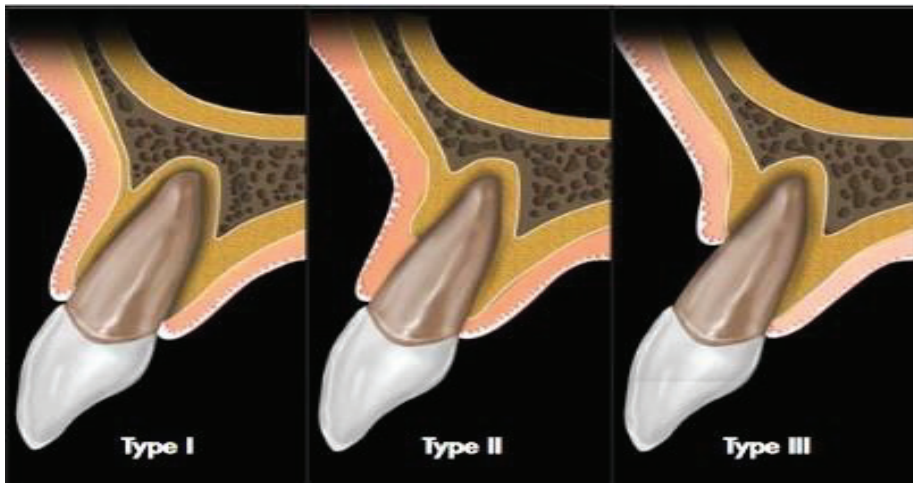


SOURCE: Kalsi, A., Kalsi, J. & Bassi, S. Alveolar ridge preservation: why, when and how.

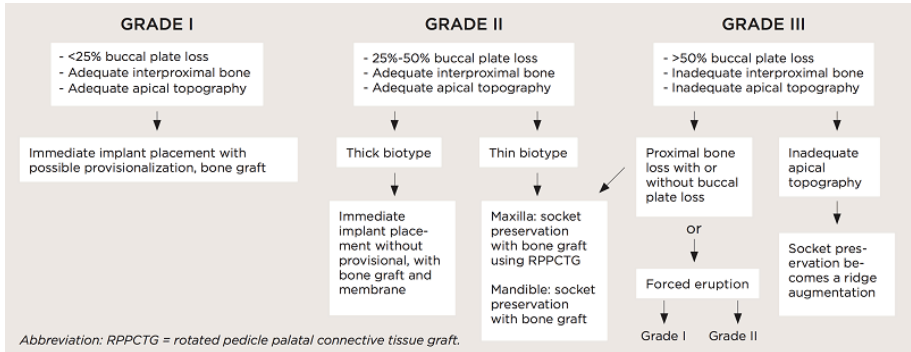
Br Dent J 227, 264–274 (2019)

Socket Preservation Classification and Treatment Protocol

- ***Eliau et al classification*** is based on hard and soft tissue loss pre extraction. The treatment recommendations, at that time anyway, are found below -
 - ✓ ***Type I Socket***: The facial soft tissue and buccal plate of bone are at normal levels in relation to the cemento-enamel junction of the pre-extracted tooth and remain intact post extraction.
 - ✓ ***Type II Socket***: Facial soft tissue is present but the buccal plate is partially missing following extraction of the tooth.
 - ✓ ***Type III Socket***: The facial soft tissue and the buccal plate of bone are both markedly reduced after tooth extraction.
- ***Tarnow and Chu*** have a further sub-classification of the *Type 2* category, which seems like a rather obvious breakdown by how much bone loss is present
 - ✓ ***Type 2A*** presents with a dehiscence defect roughly 5 mm to 6 mm from the free gingival margin (FGM) involving the coronal one-third of the labial bone plate
 - ✓ ***Type 2B*** presents with a dehiscence defect involving the middle one-third of the labial plate, approximately 7 mm to 9 mm from the FGM
 - ✓ ***Type 2C*** presents with the dehiscence defect involving the apical one-third of the labial osseous plate roughly 10 mm or greater from the FGM.

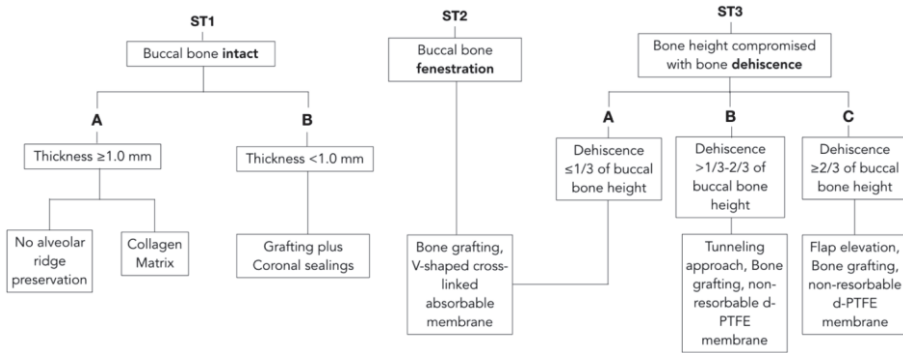


Eliau et al classification



Socket type (ST) Classification by Steigmann et al

- **Anatomy of the Post-Extractive Socket** has been classified in three categories based on buccal bone characteristics including height, thickness and presence of dehiscence or fenestration.
- **ST Classification** represents an evaluation of the self-contentive anatomy of the socket that ranges from highest regenerative potential for ST 1 to lowest for ST 3C.
- **Socket type 1 (ST1)** described an extraction socket with intact buccal bone;
 - ✓ ST1 Subclass A (ST1A): buccal bone thickness of ≥ 1.0 mm
 - ✓ ST1 Subclass B (ST1B): buccal bone thickness of < 1.0 mm
- **Socket type 2 (ST2)** referred to sockets with buccal bone fenestration
- **Socket type 3 (ST3)** was used for buccal bone dehiscences that would compromise bone height. It was further subdivided according to severity and extent of the buccal dehiscence;
 - ✓ ST 3 Subclass A (ST 3A) was used when a dehiscence is present and extending less than 1/3 of the length of the buccal bone wall;
 - ✓ ST 3 Subclass B (ST 3B) was used when a buccal dehiscence is present and extending 1/3 to 2/3 of the total length of the alveolus;
 - ✓ ST 3 Subclass C (ST 3C) was used for severe dehiscence passing more than 2/3 of the facial bone of the alveolus.
- With knowledge of socket-type classification, a decision tree was proposed by Steigmann et al to match each anatomical scenario to the most predictable treatment modality excluding primary wound-closure approaches and immediate implant-placement approaches.



Points To Remember

- Socket preservation is a preventative approach designed to reduce the loss of alveolar ridge following tooth removal.
- Various techniques and materials for socket preservation have been documented, showing a significant decrease in bone loss after extraction.
- *Atraumatic extraction* that maintains the integrity of the socket wall is sufficient to promote bone regeneration within the socket.
- *Resorbable or Non-Resorbable barrier membranes* can be applied to the socket during the healing process. Covering the socket leads to improved bone preservation compared to sockets that remain uncovered.
- *Grafting materials* have included freeze-dried bone allograft and demineralized freeze-dried bone allograft, which have been used both with and without a collagen membrane.
- When grafting is performed without a membrane, it may result in fibrous encapsulation of the graft material, impacting future bone-implant integration. Alloplastic materials have also been utilized; however, these tend to have prolonged healing times and less bone incorporation into the graft.
- *Immediate implant placement* utilizing xenografts and hydroxyapatite has been implemented to prevent resorption following extraction.
- *Stem Cells* and *Growth Factors* usage for alveolar ridge preservation are promising for future daily clinical practice.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Tolentino PHMP, Rodrigues LG, Miranda de Torres É, Franco A, Silva RF. Extractions in Patients with Periodontal Diseases and Clinical Decision-Making Process. *Acta Stomatol Croat*. 2019 Jun; 53(2):141-149
2. Moreira CHC, Zanatta FB, Antoniazzi R, Meneguetti PC, Rösing CK. Criteria adopted by dentists to indicate the extraction of periodontally involved teeth. *J Appl Oral Sci* [Internet]. 2007Sep; 15(5):437–41.
3. Tonetti MS, Greenwell H, Kornman KS. Staging and grading of periodontitis: Framework and proposal of a new classification and case definition. *J Periodontol*. 2018 Jun; 89 Suppl 1:S159-S172.
4. Cárcamo-España V, Cuesta Reyes N, Flores Saldivar P, Chimenos-Küstner E, Estrugo Devesa A, López-López J. Compromised Teeth Preserve or Extract: A Review of the Literature. *J Clin Med*. 2022 Sep 8; 11(18):5301.
5. Avila G., Galindo-Moreno P., Soehren S., Misch C.E., Morelli T., Wang H. A novel decision-making process for tooth retention or extraction. *J. Periodontol*. 2009;80:476–491
6. Nunn M.E., Fan J., Su X., Levine R.A., Lee H., McGuire M.K. Development of prognostic indicators using classification and regression trees for survival. *Periodontol*. 2000. 2012; 58:134–142.
7. Saumya Jitendra Kanode, Anand Narayanrao Wankhede, Changes in Alveolar Bone Dimension after Extraction Sockets and Methods of ridge preservation, *J Res Med Dent Sci*, 2022, 10 (11): 191-194
8. Haggerty C, Laughlin R. Extraction Site (Socket) Preservation Atlas of Operative Oral and Maxillofacial Surgery. 2015 John Wiley & Sons, Inc.
9. Ebenezer, Elsie Sunitha; Muthu, Jananni; Balu, Pratebha; Kumar, R. Saravana. Socket preservation techniques: An overview with literature review. *SRM Journal of Research in Dental Sciences* 13(3): p 115-120, Jul–Sep 2022.
10. Kalsi, A., Kalsi, J. & Bassi, S. Alveolar ridge preservation: why, when and how. *Br Dent J* 227, 264–274 (2019)

11. Shadid, R.M. Immediate implant placement with socket shield technique in the maxilla: a prospective case series evaluation at 1-year follow-up. *Head Face Med* **18**, 17 (2022)
12. Mishra SK, Chowdhary R. Socketshield Technique for Immediate Implant Placement. *Int J Prosthodont Restor Dent* 2018;8(4):99-100
13. Salama H, Salama M. The role of orthodontic extrusive remodelling in the enhancement of soft and hard tissue profiles before implant placement: a systematic approach to the management of extraction site defects. *Int J Periodontics Restorative Dent* 1993; **13**: 312-333
14. Trombelli L, Farina R, Marzola A, Bozzi L, Liljenberg B, Lindhe J. Modelling and remodelling of human extraction sockets. *J Clin Periodontol* 2008; **35**: 630-639.
15. Schropp L, Wenzel A, Kostopoulos L, Karring T. Bone healing and soft tissue contour changes following single-tooth extraction: a clinical and radiographic 12-month prospective study. *Int J Periodontics Restorative Dent* 2003; **23**: 313-323
16. Cardaropoli G, Araujo M, Hayacibara R, Sukekava F, Lindhe J. Healing of extraction sockets and surgically produced - augmented and non-augmented - defects in the alveolar ridge. An experimental study in the dog. *J Clin Periodontol* 2005; **32**: 435-440
17. Al-Harbi S H. Minimizing trauma during tooth removal: a systematic sectioning approach. *Eur J Esthet Dent* 2010; **5**: 274-287
18. Wittneben J G, Weber H P. ITI treatment guide volume 6. Extended edentulous spaces in the esthetic zone. New Malden: Quintessence, 2012
19. Hubar J S. Quantification of the lamina dura. *J Can Dent Assoc* 1993; **59**: 997-1000. Araujo M G, Lindhe J. Dimensional ridge alterations following tooth extraction. An experimental study in the dog. *J Clin Periodontol* 2005; **32**: 212-218
20. Elian N, Cho SC, Froum S, Smith RB, Tarnow DP. A simplified socket classification and repair technique. *Pract Proced Aesthet Dent*. 2007 Mar; 19(2):99-104; quiz 106. PMID: 17491484

21. Chu SJ, Sarnachiaro GO, Hochman MN, Tarnow DP. Subclassification and Clinical Management of Extraction Sockets with Labial Dentoalveolar Dehiscence Defects. *Compend Contin Educ Dent*. 2015 Jul-Aug;36(7):516, 518-20, 522 passim. PMID: 26247445
22. Steigmann, L., Di Gianfilippo, R., Steigmann, M., & Wang, H.-L. (2022). Classification Based on Extraction Socket Buccal Bone Morphology and Related Treatment Decision Tree. *Materials*, 15(3), 733
23. Frost, Natalie & Banjar, Arwa & Galloway, Patrick & Huynh-Ba, Guy & Mealey, Brian. (2014). The Decision-Making Process for Ridge Preservation Procedures after Tooth Extraction. *Clinical Advances in Periodontics*. 4. 56-63. 10.1902/cap.2013.130013

CHAPTER 9

ENDODONTIC PRESERVATION & REHABILITATION OF THE EXTRACTION SOCKET



Dr Vanita Dattaraya Revankar, MDS, Ph.D.

Professor

Conservative Dentistry & Endodontics

Vinayaka Mission's Sankarachariyar Dental College

*Vinayaka Mission's Research Foundation
(Deemed To Be University)*

Salem, Tamil Nadu, India

-
- Extraction is frequently taken into consideration from an ***endodontic standpoint*** when endodontic therapy is no longer practical or when the tooth is too damaged to be repaired.
 - Although the goal of endodontic therapy is to preserve the tooth, conditions such as non-restorable caries, root fractures, or endodontic failure may make extraction the better course of action.
 - Accurate diagnosis, a systematic approach to endodontic clinical assessment, and an evaluation of case complexity are necessary for effective endodontic therapy and successful treatment outcomes. Disregarding these essential elements may jeopardise the entire treatment plan. Successful endodontic care and positive treatment outcomes are based on systematic endodontic clinical assessment, case complexity assessment, and precise diagnosis.
 - The symptoms of endodontic pathology can range from unexpected findings made during routine exams that the patient is frequently

unaware of to situations in which patient's exhibit severe discomfort and acute sufferings.

- Because endodontics is such a specialised treatment field, cases can vary greatly in complexity.
- In order to grade complexity, these characteristics can be systematically evaluated and compiled using ***case difficulty evaluation methods***.
- The *Canadian, Dutch, and American Endodontic Associations'* case difficulty evaluation forms and the Restorative Dentistry Index of Treatment Need (RDITN) are among the many resources available.
- The *Clinical Standard for Restorative Dentistry* publication also contains guidance for NHS services provided in the UK.
- Accurate history taking is vital for a proper diagnosis and successful treatment planning, but it's important to understand that pre-operative symptoms alone might not be sufficient for conclusive therapy.
- Endodontic treatment aims to preserve natural teeth by eradicating the bacterial infection inside the root canal system and preventing the invasion of bacteria and their by-products from the root canal system into the periradicular tissues.
- Making decisions about the prognosis of the tooth and available treatment options becomes more difficult when a combination of endodontic, periodontal, and prosthetic interventions are needed in a clinical scenario. In some situations, practitioners could rely heavily on their own experiences when making decisions, yet this can come out as deceptive.
- ***By applying the concepts of evidence-based dentistry to the practitioner's own experience, the clinician may give the patient the best care feasible given the situation.***
- Therefore, the practitioner's decision-making process should take into account the patient's values, the long-term prognosis, the potential of contemporary endodontic treatment, the alternatives in the event that treatment fails, and the quality of life following treatment.
- *The endodontic perspective in clinical decision-making about the preservation and treatment of natural teeth will be the main topic of this chapter. The chapter will cover modern endodontic technology and treatment methods, case selection, treatment planning, and long-*

term prognosis as the foundation for clinical decision making, as well as decision making for the diagnosis and treatment of endodontic problems.

Case Selection, Treatment Planning, and Long-Term Prognosis

- Teeth that were previously thought to be endodontically untreatable can now be retained thanks to recent advancements in endodontic technology and a better knowledge of endodontic illness. But rather than taking the role of clinical judgement, technology can be used as a tool to help practitioners achieve their treatment objectives.
- Strict case selection and treatment planning must be done using the best available scientific data and a comprehensive clinical evaluation.
- Knowing the long-term prognosis and the available treatment options is one of the most important aspects of case selection and treatment planning.
- Both treatment success defined as "absence of endodontic disease based on full clinical and radiographic evaluation" and tooth survival defined as "the retention of the tooth following the treatment" can be used to determine the endodontic treatment outcome.
- Approximately 90% of teeth that get non-surgical root canal therapy survive for two to ten years. However, many tooth- and patient-specific factors, such as the *presence, type, and quality of the coronal restoration; the presence and severity of a periodontal disease; and the presence of some predisposing systemic medical conditions*, may change these chances, making this general average of survival rates impractical for treatment planning.
- Therefore, in order to make logical decisions, a proper case selection and treatment planning procedure needs to be situation specific, which is achieved by assessing all pertinent endodontic and non-endodontic aspects.

Contemporary Endodontic Technologies

- *Digital imaging systems, ultrasonic devices, dental operation microscopes, and electronic apex locators* are examples of modern endodontic technology that have revolutionised endodontic therapy.
- Recent advancements in endodontic technology and their implications for contemporary endodontic practice will be reviewed.

❖ **Electronic Apex Locators (EAL):**

- Procedures for treating root canals should be coordinated within the root canal system.
- The distance from a coronal reference point to the point where canal preparation and obturation should end is known as the working length.
- It is anticipated that maintaining the proper working length throughout root canal therapy may improve treatment results and avoid postoperative discomfort.
- However, it is nearly impossible to determine the proper working length using radiography or other clinical methods due to differences in the apical root morphology and other clinical constraints. During root canal therapy treatments, the working length can be precisely located with the use of electronic root canal length measurement instruments.
- In the presence of pulp tissue or conductive fluids, early generation EAL's were frequently imprecise. These restrictions are essentially eliminated by modern EAL's; but, like with any electronic equipment, competent use and comprehension of the outcome are essential.
- It is nearly impossible for EAL's to miscalculate. When a device is functioning properly, errors in electronic working length measurements are always the result of an operator's poor interpretation.
- When the EAL's fail to provide a working length reading, the physician should be aware of the state of the operational field. A subsequent electrical short circuit will stop the device from working and cause the reading to be interpreted incorrectly if there is caries, metal restorations, or marginal leakage.
- However, a lack of apical patency or totally dry canals may impede the electrical current, which would stop the EAL from functioning. Radiographs are still required in these situations in order to estimate working length.

❖ **Magnification and Illumination Systems:**

- The variable magnification required in endodontic practice can be achieved with modern microscopes, which range from X3 to X30 magnification.
- When using higher magnifications, the microscope is superior to loupes in its available depth of field, and its fibre-optic light source is far superior to the surgical headlamp that is occasionally attached to loupes.

❖ **Contemporary Endodontic Treatment Modalities:**

- For the repair and preservation of compromised teeth, modern endodontics offers a variety of treatment options. These strategies include surgical and nonsurgical endodontic treatment, as well as the care of problems such as fractures, separated instruments, and perforations in the roots.
- Even for complex cases, these contemporary therapy options might offer a predictable prognosis.
- At the moment, the majority of teeth that receive endodontic treatment live for a long time, and those that are eventually pulled are typically lost due to non-endodontic reasons such as prosthetic or periodontal constraints.
- However, the literature has documented a very high prevalence of persistent apical periodontitis in endodontically treated teeth, ranging from 40 to 60%.
- Following an endodontic treatment, the primary cause of apical periodontitis is either bacteria that have permeated the root canal system due to ongoing coronal leakage or bacteria that are still present in the root canal system after the initial endodontic treatment.
- Other potential causes include *foreign body reactions*, *extra radicular infections*, and the *existence of actual cysts*.
- ***Nonsurgical endodontic re-treatment, surgical endodontic treatment, or in some situations, tooth extraction, are some of the options for treating chronic apical periodontitis.***
- Even more difficult is the clinical choice to treat asymptomatic teeth with peri-apical radiolucency because a follow-up may occasionally be needed and should be based on the quality assessment of the restoration and root canal filling.

- Unsatisfactory root canal fillings and/or restorations have been linked to an increased risk of ongoing peri-apical condition failure.
- The likelihood of success can be greatly impacted by a number of case-specific factors, which should be considered and taken into account when making decisions. These factors include the existence of a preoperative peri-apical lesion and any morphological changes or complications that occurred during the previous endodontic treatment and that impact the ability to properly re-treat the entire root canal system.
- Complication risks are present with endodontic therapy, just like with any other treatment approach.
- ❖ **Vertical Root Fractures (VRF):**
 - One consequence of root canal therapy is a vertical root fracture (VRF), which is described as "a complete or incomplete fracture initiated from the root at any level, usually directed buccolingually.
 - VRF's have been observed to occur in as much as 20% of extracted endodontically treated teeth, making them a quite common complication in teeth that have had root canal therapy.
 - If implant therapy proves to be the preferred treatment, prompt diagnosis and appropriate management are necessary to prevent significant loss of alveolar bone, which could hinder future reconstructive treatments.
 - A definitive diagnosis of a VRF may be best achieved by intrusive diagnostic procedures such as direct monitoring of the suspicious region during flap elevation, as clinical diagnosis of a VRF is difficult.
 - The prognosis for a VRF tooth was traditionally seen as dire, and attempts to treat a VRF, such as by gluing the fragmented pieces, were found to be unexpected.
 - Nevertheless, a number of recent studies proposed innovative therapeutic options meant to protect VRF teeth. The development of these innovative therapeutic approaches is still in its early phases and is mostly based on case reports. *It appears that modern materials like mineral trioxide aggregate (MTA) for VRF repair and magnification devices that enhance diagnostic and treatment capacities offer potential treatment possibilities for some VRF teeth.*

- Following a VRF diagnosis, the case selection procedure necessitates a combination of *prosthetic, periodontal, endodontic, and aesthetic considerations*.
- The dentist should consider and take into account the patient's values, the type of tooth, the existence of a predisposing periodontal disease, the type of coronal restoration, the alternatives provided by contemporary endodontic treatment, the alternatives in the event that treatment fails, the post-treatment quality of life, and the other alternatives available.
- There are possible options to preserve a multi-rooted tooth with a VRF in one of the roots, such as root amputation of the vertically fractured root.
- Since the periodontium is the tooth's supporting structure, periodontal disorders have the potential to cause its destruction.
- A crucial determinant of the success of treatment and preservation of the VRF tooth is the periodontal status of the tooth, particularly the presence of a predisposition to severe periodontal disease with deep periodontal probing depth, accompanying bleeding, and substantial movement. ***Consequently, as part of the clinical evaluation and decision-making process, a thorough periodontal evaluation is essential.***
- VRF is often detected only after all endodontic and prosthetic procedures have been finished since it is a difficult clinical diagnosis.
- The choice of whether to make extra efforts to treat and preserve the VRF tooth may depend on the timing of the VRF diagnosis, whether it was made before or after the restorative procedures were finished, as well as the type of prosthetic restoration (e.g., a tooth that is a part of a bridge or a stand-alone restoration).
- The quantity of surviving tooth structure, the crown-to-root ratio, the ferrule effect, and the post-endodontic treatment restoration are just a few of the prosthetic factors that impact the long-term prognosis of endodontically treated teeth.
- Therefore, a wider range of prosthetic, periodontal, and aesthetic considerations that impact the tooth's long-term prognosis and the likelihood of complications should be taken into account when deciding whether to perform additional treatment to preserve a VRF

tooth, rather than relying solely on the technical ability to endodontically treat the fracture line.

❖ **Iatrogenic Root Perforations:**

- Iatrogenic root perforations, which are described as *"the mechanical or pathologic communication between the root canal system and the external tooth surface,"* can occur in as many as 12% of teeth that have undergone endodontic treatment.
- Perforations can result from any endodontic technique, including post-space preparation, root canal instrumentation, access cavity preparation, and canal orifice search.
- There are a number of known risk factors for perforations, including curved root canals, certain tooth placements, and the expertise and experience of the practitioner. The location, size, time since onset, and presence of bacterial contamination all affect the prognosis of teeth with holes.
- The best clinical strategy for treating root perforations is prevention. Nonetheless, contemporary endodontic practice enhances the capacity to identify and effectively treat perforations in the event that one does occur.
- Because buccal or lingual pathology might be difficult to detect on radiographs because they are superimposed on the root, the true prevalence of perforations may be higher than what has been documented in the literature.
- ***New imaging modalities*** like CBCT are also showing encouraging outcomes, and evaluating the radiographs at two different horizontal angles may help the clinician diagnose perforations more accurately.
- An older age may increase the chance of a perforation. This could be due to a number of anatomical, physiological, and pathological age-related factors, including narrower root canals and the apposition of secondary dentin, morphological changes in the tooth crown that make it more difficult to align during endodontic procedures, and the growing number of teeth undergoing endodontic and restorative procedures as people age.
- Mandibular molar teeth have a higher frequency of perforations than other tooth sites. Due to the substantial curvature and configuration of mandibular molar root canals, the clinician may encounter

technical challenges during root canal preparation, which could result in performance issues. It is also possible that a concavity on the distal surface of the mandibular molars' mesial roots is linked to a higher risk of perforations.

- Due to bacterial infection and the superimposition of irritating restorative materials on the perforated site, periodontal damage is the primary consequence of perforation. *Crestal perforations* and *extensive pathosis*, in particular, are typically linked to substantial pathological alterations in the surrounding periodontal tissues as well as challenges in creating a sufficient seal, all of which lower the likelihood of a favourable periodontal healing outcome.

❖ **Separated Endodontic Instruments:**

- It is possible for all endodontic instruments, whether made of stainless steel or nickel-titanium, to separate when receiving root canal therapy. If it hinders the attainment of the treatment objectives by impeding proper root canal preparation, disinfection, and obturation, the fragment of the retained instrument may have an impact on the prognosis of endodontic treatment.
- If a separated instrument is left in the canal after the initial root canal treatment and is not identified preoperatively before a re-treatment procedure, it poses a medico-legal risk because the clinician performing the endodontic re-treatment procedure may be held accountable for its presence in the canal.
- A combination of anatomical, technical, biological, and pathological factors must be taken into account when deciding how to handle retained separated instruments. These factors include the anatomy of the root and canal, the endodontic clinical diagnosis, the treatment stage, the instrument's location within the root canal, and the size and type of the fragment.
- The options for managing separated instruments include *retrieving the instrument, using a retrograde endodontic surgical approach to accomplish the endodontic treatment goals, bypassing the instrument and incorporating it into the root canal filling, leaving the separated instrument in the canal while endodontically treating and sealing the more coronal parts of the canal, or in some cases, considering tooth extraction.*

- It is wise to weigh the potential dangers of each treatment choice against the anticipated benefits.
- Clinical problems and diagnostic difficulties are exacerbated when a separated instrument is found in the apical third of a full root canal. It may become impossible to detect the instrument radiographically due to its continuous radiopaque appearance and the filling material inside the canal.
- Consequently, even in cases where no discernible separated device was found using any of the radiographic techniques, the potential for one should always be taken into account when making decisions.
- In addition, there may be a lower chance of success and a higher chance of root perforation and weaker roots during attempts at bypass or fragment removal in situations when the fragment is situated in the apical third of the canal. The only choices in these situations can be endodontic surgery or perhaps tooth extraction.

❖ **Root Resorption:**

- Root resorption is a pathological process that can eventually result in tooth loss. It can happen on the outside of the tooth (*external root resorption*) or inside the root canal (*internal resorption*).
- External root resorption, which is typically linked to ongoing stimulation such as pulp infection, happens when the outside tissue on the root surface is harmed due to surgical, traumatic, pathological, or procedural injury. Rarely, systemic diseases like *hyperparathyroidism* can cause root resorption. In other cases, such cervical root resorption or replacement resorption, root resorption may continue without additional stimulation.
- ***Radiography and clinical examination are used to diagnose root resorption.*** To ascertain which root surface is affected and the degree of resorption, intraoral radiographs taken at various angles may be helpful. According to recent research, CBCT might be a helpful supplementary diagnostic method.
- ***The goal of treatment for root resorption is to remove the affected tissue, restore the tooth to allow for function and aesthetics, and stop the ongoing resorption stimulation*** (such as the pulp infection, pressure from the unerupted tooth, or forces applied as a result of orthodontic tooth movement).

- **Root Canal Therapy** might be necessary if pulpal involvement is present.
- Treatment becomes more complex and extraction may be necessary if the root resorption is significant.
- Following a clinical examination, radiographic imaging is crucial for detecting potential problems. The first-line imaging option of choice for endodontic evaluations is usually *peri-apical radiographs* (PA's), which are often acquired using a beam-aiming instrument. When it comes to diagnosing internal and exterior root resorption, PA radiographs are useful for spotting peri-apical lesions and indications of bone resorption near the apex.
- A variety of disorders with both odontogenic and non-odontogenic causes can be indicated by periphery radiolucencies. When reading radiographs, it is important to take non-odontogenic factors into account because this knowledge might affect the accuracy of the diagnosis and the course of therapy.
- *From an endodontic standpoint, radicular cysts, abscesses, and periapical granulomas are the most common presentations for these disorders.*
- A *periapical granuloma* is a long-term lesion that arises from granulation tissue-characterized periapical inflammation.
- A *periapical abscess* is characterised by the build-up of pus in the periapical tissue; it frequently manifests as a draining fistula (chronic abscess) or swelling (acute abscess).
- On the other hand, a *periapical cyst* is a well-defined hollow that is bordered with epithelium and filled with fluid. It is often linked to more extensive, chronic periapical periodontitis and often shows indications of bone cortication. The lesion's dimensions and form offer crucial diagnostic hints.
- In contrast to granulomas and abscesses, which can appear irregular and poorly defined, cysts are typically circular and well-defined with a regular boundary.
- ❖ **Tooth mobility:**
 - One of the elements influencing tooth prognosis is tooth mobility.
 - Miller defines the classification of tooth mobility (Miller SC, 1950). There are three phases of tooth movement. Mobility that is greater

than normal but less than 1mm is referred to as **grade 1**. A tooth moving 1 mm or little over 1 mm in a horizontal motion is referred to as **grade 2**. **Grade 3** denotes vertical displacement with or without rotation and mobility greater than 1 mm in the horizontal direction.

- Teeth with grade 3 mobility require extraction since they can be disruptive and uncomfortable for the patient to chew, and they have a long-term detrimental impact on the tooth's prognosis.
- It is important for the dentist to remember that, for instance, older people may have physiological mobility. The dentist also has to know that front teeth are more mobile than posterior teeth, which have several roots. This should be taken into account while determining the tooth's prognosis and the best course of action.

Socket Preservation

- The goal of recent developments in socket preservation following tooth extraction is to minimise bone loss and preserve sufficient bone volume for future implants or restorations.
- This is accomplished through a variety of methods, such as **barrier membranes**, **bone grafts**, and in certain situations, **immediate implant placement**; methods such as **collagen plugs** and **chitosan** also show promise in promoting healing and reducing bone resorption.
- After a tooth extraction, socket preservation is a preventative measure used to reduce alveolar ridge atrophy. Numerous methods and materials for socket preservation have been documented to considerably lessen bone loss after extraction.
- To repair socket bone development, **atraumatic extraction** that leaves the socket wall intact is sufficient.
- During the healing process, the socket can be covered by barrier membranes that are either **resorbable** or **non-resorbable**.
- Compared to exposed sockets, covered sockets result in greater bone preservation.
- Among the grafting materials are demineralised and freeze-dried bone **allograft**, which can be employed with or without collagen membrane. Grafting without a membrane could cause the graft material to become encapsulated in fibrous material, which could affect the future contact between the implant and bone.

- In order to prevent post-extraction resorption, immediate implant implantation using *hydroxyapatite* and *xenografts* has also been utilised.
- A therapeutic technique called *socket preservation* helps to prevent bone loss following tooth extraction and promotes bone healing in the ensuing bone defect.
- Using a synthetic bone substitute made of beta-tricalcium phosphate and strengthened with methylcellulose and hyaluronic acid was the subject of a clinical research. MNGC's were found in the augmented region as a result of the cellular response to the biomaterial, which was indicative of a foreign body reaction.
- Additionally, after four months, new bone development was seen and the biomaterial was almost completely broken down.
- To fill the gap or even enhance the ridge contour, a graft of some kind is frequently placed into the socket. Following graft placement, the site is sealed by primary closure or occlusion using a membrane or plug of some kind.
- Another option is to cover the socket with a semipermeable membrane of some kind to promote bone fill and prevent the formation of fibrous tissue.
- In order to save time and prevent donor site morbidity, the majority of doctors who perform socket preservation opt to utilise *non-autogenous materials*. The simplest method of trying to preserve ridges is *Directed Bone Regeneration* with a semipermeable membrane that can either be resorbable or non-resorbable. According to contemporary hypothesis, subperiosteal bone formation is made possible by the membrane's pore size, which inhibits fibrous ingrowth.
- Many studies have been conducted on the use of membranes solely for guided bone regeneration for periodontal defects and in conjunction with immediate implant placement. *However, the usefulness of the different membranes alone in an extraction model has only been tested in a small number of carefully planned studies.*
- Resorbable and non-resorbable would all be compared to an untreated control in a randomised split-mouth study, which would be the gold standard. So far, no one has done this.

- In previous research, expanded polytetrafluoroethylene (e-PTFE) membranes were used and contrasted with untreated controls. **Lekovic et al.** reported statistically significant improvements in ridge height maintenance when compared to no treatment. But in 30% of the patients, the membrane became exposed, resulting in bone loss similar to that of the untreated controls and negating any therapeutic benefit.
- However, 30% of the patients experienced membrane exposure, which resulted in bone loss equivalent to that of the untreated controls, negating any therapeutic benefit.
- The membranes have the added benefit of being occlusive, or physically containing particulate matter, as soon as they are placed after grafting.
- For socket occlusion, other materials can be employed, but the semipermeable membrane appears to have some advantages.
- **Vasilic and associates** compared the preservation of ridges in sites grafted with collagen membrane and bovine porous bone mineral versus sites grafted with bovine porous bone mineral combined with and covered by an autologous fibrinogen-fibronectin system using a split-mouth design. When the collagen membrane was applied to the porous bone mineral of the cow, the 6-month re-entry measurements showed less loss of height and width.
- However, the variations were within the 1 to 2mm range, which may not be clinically significant. **Resorbable membranes have the clear benefit of not requiring second-stage surgery to be retrieved.**
- Depending on the type of deterioration, they can cause a tissue reaction that is harmful to bone development because they are foreign bodies.
- **Simion and associates** recorded this impact in a research where the implant was placed right after extraction. The implant sites of the two experimental groups were coated with either non-resorbable e-PTFE membranes or resorbable polylactic/polyglycolic acid membranes. Implants were positioned without a membrane covering at the control locations. Using specifically made bone harvest cover screws, bone samples were extracted six months after the healing process.
- In comparison to the resorbable group, the locations coated with non-resorbable membranes showed more fill with a denser bone. In

contrast to no socket occlusion after extraction, *Lekovic and associates* discovered that resorbable membranes were helpful in halting bone loss.

- Ridge preservation appears to be influenced by membrane stabilisation. Suturing or membrane tacking lessens the amount of bone loss as compared to sites without stabilisation.
- *Simion and colleagues'* investigation revealed no appreciable bone fill surrounding the control implants, indicating the necessity of an occlusive membrane of some kind, either resorbable or non-resorbable, for prompt implant placement.
- Nevertheless, this conclusion has not been substantiated by subsequent studies. In their work, *Botticelli and colleagues* placed large-grit, acid-etched, sandblasted surface implants in a dog model and discovered membranes of no use. The test sites were either left exposed or coated with a resorbable membrane. The membrane and non-membrane locations did not differ in ground sections of block biopsies obtained four months later. The study's modest number of implant locations and the possibility that a dog's bone healing process differs from a human's are likely to be cited by sceptics.
- Occlusive membranes made of titanium are now being employed. The benefit of being biocompatible eliminates the need for a second operation, although there is currently no data regarding their effectiveness.

Non-Autogenous Graft Materials:

- When comparing membrane alone versus membrane plus graft, there is some indication that the former may heal with better-quality bone depending on the type of graft material used.
- A wide spectrum of bottled graft materials is available, and considerable research has been done on the outcome when various types are used.
- *Carmagnola and colleagues* compared bone loss in extraction sites treated with a Bio-Gide (*Geistlich Group, Zurich, Switzerland*) membrane alone and Bio-Gide covering a Bio-Oss graft (*Geistlich Group*). Untreated sockets were used as controls. *Ridge preservation was better with membrane plus graft, but the socket contents may be less desirable.*

- The graft plus membrane group had a large percentage of non-vital graft left over, while the control and membrane-only groups' biopsies at the time of implant placement revealed well-healed bone.
- On average, essential bone was barely in contact with 40% of the Bio-Oss particle circumference. Similar results using an acellular dermal matrix graft as the occlusive membrane in sites receiving resorbable hydroxyapatite were reported by *Luczyszyn and associates*.
- There was a 1 mm reduction in ridge width at the grafted sites when compared to sites with an acellular dermal matrix graft membrane alone. Nevertheless, the grafted group's re-entry specimens, which were obtained six months later, revealed graft particles that were still present together with highly vascularised connective tissue.
- In their comparison of β -tricalcium phosphate and inorganic bovine bone as graft materials in a dog model, *Artzi and colleagues* emphasised this point. Both materials were inserted into mandibular defects that were surgically produced, and unfilled sites were used as controls. A double-layered collagen membrane was used to cover and reveal the test and control areas.
- *Histomorphometry* was utilised to evaluate the volume created, residual graft, and regenerated bone in specimens that were recovered at 3, 6, 12, and 24 months. ***All transplanted locations experienced full bone healing; however, even after 24 months, residual graft remained dominant in the bovine bone group. At every time point, the β -tricalcium phosphate locations showed a noticeably larger bone area proportion of regeneration.***
- Research on *bioactive glass material* in humans has shown similar outcomes. *Froum and colleagues* conducted a randomised investigation on extraction socket healing, comparing the amount of vital bone six to eight months after healing in sites filled with either bioactive glass xenograft or freeze-dried demineralised allograft.
- The biopsies obtained upon implant implantation revealed a significantly higher percentage of bone allograft (13.5%) left than the bioactive glass (5.5%).
- In line with this discovery, the bioactive glass-grafted sites showed a greater percentage of bone regeneration, while the untreated controls and bone allograft sites were very similar. ***Searching for a filler***

substance that is quickly replenished, however, seems to reach a threshold of diminishing returns.

- ***Serino et al.*** examined the bone quality and ridge preservation in extraction sockets grafted with a resorbable polylactide-polyglycolic acid sponge (*Fisiograft, Ghimas S.p.A., Italy*) to ungrafted control sites in an effort to prevent residual non-vital graft material. ***In both test and control sites, biopsies obtained six months after implant placement showed the regeneration of mature, well-structured bone and the absence of leftover graft material.***
- Additionally, the authors claimed that the application of Fisiograft stopped or lessened the degree of alveolar resorption after extraction. On average, though, the test and control ridge dimensions differed by less than 1 mm, which is scarcely a clinically meaningful variation.
- When implant placement is planned, the idea of quickly replacing grafts with native bone is alluring.
- Even more ideal would be the capacity to stimulate a larger amount of bone fill. ***Recombinant bone morphogenetic protein research*** may be promising for a number of future uses that call for bone development and mending.
- Using the socket grafting model, ***Howell and associates*** compared the preservation and augmentation of ridges in two groups whose sites were grafted using absorbable collagen sponge (ACS) or collagen sponge soaked with recombinant human bone morphogenetic protein 2 (rhBMP-2). In addition to morphological evaluation, the study examined long-term safety, functional outcomes, and safety during the anticipated bone induction period.
- ***The findings validated the recombinant bone morphogenetic protein's safety both locally and systemically;*** however, a varied decrease of volume was observed between one and two months. No augmentation was accomplished. Even while the material behaved well and had no negative consequences, there are undoubtedly more affordable ways to preserve ridges.
- By using computed tomography (CT) to assess the changes in ridge height following therapy, ***Fiorellini and colleagues*** found statistically significant differences ($P = 0.007$) between the untreated control group and the use of an ACS soaked with 1.50 mg/mL rhBMP-2.

To Round Up

- When making decisions about the maintenance and preservation of natural teeth, practitioners should consider the following factors: *the patient's values, the long-term prognosis, the potential of contemporary endodontic treatment, the alternatives in the event that treatment is unsuccessful, and the quality of life following treatment.*
- Contemporary endodontic technologies, including surgical operation microscopes, electronic apex locators, and sophisticated equipment and imaging systems, may enhance tooth treatment and retention. *Technology can be used as an adjunct by practitioners to achieve their treatment objectives, but it cannot take the place of clinical judgment.*
- A dentist's choice between endodontic therapy and extraction is influenced by a variety of factors.
- A patient's choice of therapy is influenced by their preference for low-cost procedures vs. their refusal to have their teeth extracted at any cost. Patients without financial limitations can also influence prospects for further treatment options. Accordingly, the patient ought to be involved in the planning of the treatment.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Babacar Touré, Babacar Faye, Abdoul W Kane, Cheikh M Lo, Bassirou Niang, Yves Boucher. Analysis of reasons for extraction of endodontically treated teeth: a prospective study. J ENDOD. 2011;37(11):1512-5.
2. Tsvetelina Borisova-Papancheva, Slavena Svetlozarova. Reasons for Extraction of Endodontically Treated Teeth – Literature Review. MedInform, 2020, ISSUE 1.
3. Eyal Rosen, Igor Tsisis. Evidence-based decision-making in endodontics. *Clinical Dentistry Reviewed*.2017: 1(1): Article 6.
4. C Williams-Beecher. Treating Patients with Disabilities – An Endodontic Perspective| October 2, 2023

5. Hany Mohamed Aly Ahmed. Management of third molar teeth from an endodontic perspective. *European Journal of General Dentistry* 2012; 1(03): 148-160
6. Rosen E, Nemcovsky CE, Tsesis I. Evidence-based decision making in dentistry: the endodontic perspective. Chapter 1: First online: 2017:pp19-37.
7. Tsesis I, Beitlitum I, Rosen E .Treatment alternatives for the preservation of vertically root fractured teeth. Springer, Cham. pp 97–109 https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-16847-0_7.
8. Babacar Touré, Babacar Faye * et al. Analysis of Reasons for Extraction of Endodontically Treated Teeth: A Prospective Study. *Journal of Endodontics*: 2011: Volume 37, Issue 11,Pages A1-A32, e95-e96, 1491-1602 .
9. Nestoras E Tzimpoulas et al. A prospective study of the extraction and retention incidence of endodontically treated teeth with uncertain prognosis after endodontic referral. *JOE*; 2012 Oct; 38(10):1326-9.

CHAPTER 10

ROOT CANAL THERAPY AS ALTERNATIVE TO DENTAL EXTRACTION - CHALLENGES, PROGRESS AND EVIDENCE-BASED APPROACH



Dr Malwiika Sisodiya, MDS

Professor & Head of Department

Conservative Dentistry & Endodontics

*Maharana Pratap College of Dentistry and Research
Centre*

*Madhya Pradesh Medical Science University (MPMSU)
Jabalpur, Madhya Pradesh*



Dr Gargee Roy Choudhary, MDS (Pursuing)

Junior Resident

Conservative Dentistry & Endodontics

*Maharana Pratap College of Dentistry and Research
Centre*

*Madhya Pradesh Medical Science University (MPMSU)
Jabalpur, Madhya Pradesh*

-
- Preservation of the natural dentition remains a fundamental objective of contemporary restorative dentistry. Natural teeth provide unique biological and functional advantages through the periodontal ligament, including proprioception and physiological adaptability, which cannot be completely replicated by artificial replacements.
 - In addition, retaining natural teeth contributes to patients' psychological well-being, self-confidence, and overall quality of life.

- The primary goal of contemporary dentistry is to restore oral health, function, aesthetics, comfort, and speech while preserving the integrity of the stomatognathic system whenever possible.
- When pulpal inflammation progresses to irreversible damage or pulp necrosis in a restorable tooth, **Root Canal Therapy** becomes the most predictable treatment for eliminating infection while preserving the natural dentition.
- Endodontics plays a pivotal role in preserving restorable teeth affected by pulpal or periapical disease. *Continuous advances in diagnostic techniques, instrumentation, irrigation protocols, and biocompatible materials have significantly improved the predictability of root canal therapy.*
- When appropriate case selection, adequate restoration, and regular follow-up are ensured, endodontically treated teeth can demonstrate favourable long-term survival and serve as a reliable alternative to dental extraction.
- Although *dental implants* have emerged as a highly predictable treatment option for replacing missing teeth, their increasing use has shifted clinical practice toward tooth replacement rather than tooth preservation.
- This evolving trend highlights the need to carefully evaluate whether a compromised but restorable natural tooth can be successfully retained through appropriate endodontic treatment before considering extraction.
- This narrative review aims to discuss root canal therapy as a preferred alternative treatment option to dental extraction by reviewing the current evidence regarding its challenges, recent advancements and evidence based clinical decision making.

Biological Importance of Preserving Natural Tooth

- Preservation of natural teeth offers several important biological advantages.
- The presence of the periodontal ligament provides proprioceptive feedback, physiological tooth mobility, and functional adaptability, all of which contribute to efficient occlusal function.

- In addition, retaining natural teeth helps preserve the surrounding alveolar bone by maintaining normal functional loading and reducing post-extraction bone resorption.
- When a restorable tooth is affected by pulpal or periapical disease, *Root Canal Therapy* plays a crucial role in eliminating infection while preserving the tooth and its supporting structures.
- The preservation of natural teeth also contributes to efficient mastication by maintaining harmonious occlusal relationships and coordinated neuromuscular function. The periodontal ligament enables sensory feedback during chewing, allowing precise regulation of bite force and masticatory efficiency, features that cannot be completely reproduced by artificial tooth replacements.
- Beyond its functional significance, preservation of the natural dentition has a positive impact on psychological well-being and quality of life. Retaining natural teeth is associated with greater self-confidence, improved aesthetics, better social interaction, and enhanced patient satisfaction, emphasizing that tooth preservation offers benefits beyond biological function alone.

When Dental Extraction is Unavoidable?

- Dental extraction is one of the most commonly performed procedures in clinical dental practice.
- Although extensive dental caries remains the leading indication for tooth removal, several other conditions may necessitate extraction, including advanced periodontal disease, endodontic failure, orthodontic requirements, impacted or failed eruption, dental trauma, prosthetic considerations, aesthetic concerns, and specific medical indications such as the elimination of potential sources of infection before immunosuppressive therapy or radiotherapy.
- Certain clinical situations, such as vertical root fractures, non-restorable teeth with inadequate remaining tooth structure, advanced periodontal destruction, extensive root resorption, or a hopeless long-term prognosis, may render tooth preservation impossible and make extraction the most appropriate treatment option.
- Teeth with extensive caries, severe structural loss, fractures, or failed restorations often present a restorative challenge.

- ***However, structural damage alone should not warrant extraction. The decision should be based on a thorough assessment of restorability, including the remaining tooth structure, periodontal support, and overall prognosis.***
- Whenever feasible, preservation of the natural tooth through endodontic and restorative treatment should be preferred over extraction.

Root Canal Therapy as the Preferred Treatment for Restorable Teeth:

- The primary objective of root canal therapy is to prevent or eliminate apical periodontitis of endodontic origin by eradicating infection from the root canal system and promoting periapical healing.
- Successful treatment aims to preserve the natural tooth in a healthy, functional, and symptom-free state.
- Root canal therapy (RCT) is a conservative dental procedure used to preserve teeth affected by irreversible pulpal inflammation or infection. It involves removal of the infected or necrotic pulp tissue, followed by cleaning, shaping, disinfection, and obturation of the root canal system.
- By eliminating infection and restoring the tooth to function, RCT relieves pain, promotes periapical healing, and serves as a reliable alternative to dental extraction in restorable teeth.
- Modern root canal therapy demonstrates high clinical success when performed using contemporary techniques and appropriate case selection.
- An updated systematic review of longitudinal clinical studies reported a pooled success rate of 82% when strict outcome criteria were applied and 92.6% when loose outcome criteria were used¹³. These findings indicate that primary root canal therapy is a predictable and reliable treatment for preserving the natural dentition.
- The outcome of root canal therapy is influenced by several biological and restorative factors. *The absence of a pre-operative periapical lesion, adequate cleaning and obturation of the root canal system, and a well-sealed coronal restoration are among the most important determinants of successful treatment.*
- Conversely, pre-existing periapical disease has been identified as one of the strongest predictors of reduced treatment success. Long-

term evidence further supports the effectiveness of root canal therapy in maintaining natural teeth.

- Longitudinal studies have demonstrated high survival rates of endodontically treated teeth over extended follow-up periods, with cumulative success remaining above 80% even after several decades. These findings reinforce the role of root canal therapy as a durable treatment option for preserving restorable teeth.

Challenges Associated With Endodontic Treatment:

- Despite significant advances in endodontic materials and techniques, root canal therapy is not always successful, and treatment failure remains an important clinical challenge.
- Endodontic failure may present clinically as persistent pain, swelling, or tenderness, and radiographically as unresolved or newly developed periapical pathology.
- Persistent microbial infection is considered the most common cause of failure and is frequently associated with missed canals or inadequate cleaning and disinfection of the root canal system. Other important causes include coronal leakage resulting in reinfection, procedural complications such as instrument separation, perforation, and ledge formation, as well as vertical root fractures and root resorption.
- In addition, complex root canal anatomy that cannot be adequately detected using conventional radiography may increase the risk of incomplete treatment.
- *Contemporary endodontics emphasizes that treatment failure should not be regarded as the end of therapy but rather as an indication for careful reassessment.*
- Early diagnosis, appropriate use of advancements and evidence-based retreatment strategies can significantly improve the prognosis of compromised teeth.
- Successful endodontic treatment depends not only on scientific evidence and technological advancements but also on the clinician's technical expertise, sound clinical judgment, and ethical decision-making.

- Inadequate diagnosis, improper case selection, or technical errors during treatment can adversely affect treatment outcomes and compromise long-term tooth survival.

Recent Progress and Technological Advances in Root Canal Therapy:

- Recent advances in endodontics have transformed the quality and predictability of root canal therapy. Developments in diagnostic imaging, instrumentation, irrigation techniques, and bioactive materials have simplified clinical procedures while improving treatment efficiency, precision, and long-term outcomes.
- These innovations have strengthened the role of root canal therapy as a reliable alternative to tooth extraction.

1. Advances in Diagnosis:

- The introduction of Cone Beam Computed Tomography (CBCT) has significantly improved three-dimensional imaging in endodontics, overcoming many of the limitations associated with conventional two-dimensional radiography.
- CBCT provides enhanced visualization of root canal morphology and periapical structures, thereby improving diagnostic accuracy and treatment planning.
- It is particularly valuable in cases involving unclear clinical signs and symptoms, complex root canal anatomy, calcified canals, root fractures, instrument separation, resorptive defects, persistent periapical lesions, retreatment cases, traumatic dental injuries, and pre-surgical endodontic assessment.
- To minimize radiation exposure, CBCT should be prescribed judiciously using the smallest feasible field of view and the lowest acceptable voxel size while maintaining adequate image quality.

2. Guided Endodontics:

- Guided endodontics is a recent advancement that combines CBCT with digital planning to facilitate precise and minimally invasive access to calcified or obliterated root canals.
- It improves the accuracy of canal location, preserves tooth structure, and reduces the risk of procedural errors such as perforation. Both static and dynamic guided techniques have shown promising results in managing complex endodontic cases.

3. Magnification in Endodontics:

- The introduction of the Dental Operating Microscope (DOM) has revolutionized modern endodontic practice by providing superior magnification and illumination.
- Enhanced visualization enables clinicians to perform procedures with greater precision while improving the detection of anatomical details that may not be visible to the naked eye.
- The use of DOM facilitates the identification of additional canals, fine cracks, and calcifications, supports conservative access cavity preparation, assists in negotiating calcified canals, and helps verify complete canal debridement before obturation. Consequently, improved visualization contributes to greater treatment accuracy, reduced procedural errors, and improved clinical outcomes.

4. Bio Ceramic Sealers:

- Bio ceramic sealers have become an important advancement in endodontics because of their excellent biocompatibility, superior sealing ability, and bioactivity.
- They are widely used for pulp capping, perforation repair, apexification, root-end filling, and as root canal sealers. Compared with conventional materials, bio ceramics promote tissue healing and provide improved clinical outcomes.
- Despite limitations such as high cost and handling difficulties, continuous improvements in material formulations have enhanced their properties and expanded their clinical applications.

5. Artificial Intelligence in Endodontics:

- Artificial intelligence (AI) is an emerging technology with promising applications in endodontics.
- AI-assisted systems can improve the interpretation of radiographic images, assist in the detection of periapical lesions and root canal anatomy, and support diagnosis and treatment planning.
- In addition, AI has potential applications in clinical decision-making, education, and research, contributing to improved accuracy, efficiency, and patient care. Although further validation is required, AI is expected to play an increasingly important role in the future of endodontic practice.

6. Regenerative Endodontics:

- Regenerative endodontics is an emerging biologically based treatment approach that aims to restore the vitality and function of the pulp–dentin complex using stem cells, biomaterial scaffolds, and growth factors.
- Compared with conventional root canal therapy, it offers the potential to preserve pulp vitality, improve tooth longevity, restore normal tooth function, and reduce the need for tooth extraction.
- Ongoing advances in stem cell therapy, bioactive biomaterials, gene therapy, nanotechnology, and personalized regenerative strategies are expected to further enhance the predictability and clinical application of regenerative endodontic procedures in the future.

Evidence Based Approach

- Root canal treatment should be considered the preferred treatment option whenever a tooth is restorable and has a favourable long-term prognosis.
- The decision to preserve or extract a tooth should be based on a comprehensive clinical assessment, including the remaining tooth structure, periodontal condition, restorability, presence of periapical disease, patient-related factors, and the feasibility of achieving an adequate coronal restoration.
- Evidence suggests that treatment planning should be individualized rather than based on a single clinical finding.
- Long-term clinical evidence demonstrates that root canal therapy is a predictable treatment for preserving natural teeth. In a 25-year prospective cohort study, root canal-treated teeth showed approximately 85% treatment success at 5 years and about 90% tooth preservation at 5 years. Although these rates gradually declined over time, ***root canal therapy continued to provide satisfactory long-term outcomes, supporting its role as a reliable alternative to extraction.***
- The study further reported that most extractions after root canal treatment were not due to endodontic failure, but rather resulted from non-restorable tooth fractures, periodontal disease, or prosthetic considerations.

- Moreover, the majority of failed root canal treatments were managed successfully through retreatment instead of extraction. ***These findings reinforce that preserving a restorable natural tooth should remain the primary treatment objective, while extraction should be reserved for teeth with a hopeless prognosis.***

To Remember

- Preservation of the natural dentition should remain the primary objective of contemporary dental practice whenever a tooth is considered restorable.
- Despite the increasing popularity of dental implants, current evidence indicates that root canal therapy remains a predictable and effective treatment option for maintaining natural teeth with pulpal and periapical diseases.
- Continuous advances in diagnostic imaging, magnification, instrumentation, irrigation techniques, bioactive materials, regenerative endodontics, guided endodontics, and artificial intelligence have further improved the success and predictability of endodontic treatment.
- Although challenges such as complex root canal anatomy, persistent infection, and procedural errors continue to influence treatment outcomes, appropriate case selection, meticulous clinical execution, and evidence-based decision-making can significantly enhance long-term tooth survival.
- ***Therefore, root canal therapy should be considered the preferred treatment whenever the tooth is restorable and has a favourable prognosis, while extraction should be reserved for cases where preservation is no longer feasible.***

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Abhishek Kumar. "Preserving Natural Dentition: The Role of Endodontics in an Implant Centric Era". NL Journal of Dentistry and Oral Sciences 2.5 (2025): 06-07.
2. Riyandhika Putra N et. al. The Role of Endodontic Treatment in Preserving Anterior Tooth as over denture Abutment: Galore International Journal of Health Sciences and Research [Indexed, Peer-Reviewed Journal] Vol. 11; Issue: 2; April-June 2026

3. Bergenholtz, Gunnar & Kvist, Thomas. (2014). Evidence-based endodontics. Endodontic Topics.
4. Viresh Chopra - Evidence-based Management of Endodontic Failures: Current Concepts, Predictive Factors, and Treatment Strategies.
5. Futuristic Trends in Medical Sciences IIP Series | Volume 3 | 2023 | ISSN: 3070-7617 (Online) E-ISBN: 978-93-6252-219-1
6. Prasad Kumara, P.A.A.S.; Cooper, P.R.; Cathro, P.; Gould, M.; Dias, G.; Ratnayake, J. Bio ceramics in Endodontics: Limitations and Future Innovations—A Review. Dent. J.2025, 13, 157
7. Regenerative Endodontics: Possibilities, Limitations, and Future Directions - Year: 2024 Volume: 2 Issue
8. Ourang, S.A., Sohrabniya, F., Mohammad- Rahimi, H., Dianat, O., Aminoshariae, A., Nagendrababu, V. et al. (2024) Artificial intelligence in endodontics: Fundamental principles, workflow, and tasks. International Endodontic Journal, 57, 1546–1565.
9. Dyonne L.M. Broers, Leander Dubois, Jan de Lange, Naichuan Su, Ad de Jongh, Reasons for Tooth Removal in Adults: A Systematic Review, International Dental Journal, Volume 72, Issue 1,2022
10. Hafiz A. Adawi and Harisha Dewan, the new dental restorability index to assess tooth restorability—adding the pulpal chamber lateral wall in considerations for classifying the badly damaged teeth. SEEJPH Volume XXVI, 2025, ISSN: 2197-5248
11. Burns, L.E., Kim, J., Wu,Y., Alzwaideh, R., McGowan, R. & Sigurdsson, A. (2022) Outcomes of primary root canal therapy: An updated systematic review of longitudinal clinical studies published between 2003 and 2020.International Endodontic Journal, 55, 714–731.
12. Zitzmann, N.U., Krastl, G., Hecker, H., Walter, C. and Weiger, R. (2009), Endodontics or implants? A review of decisive criteria and guidelines for single tooth restorations and full arch reconstructions. International Endodontic Journal, 42: 757-774.
13. Helkimo, E & Carlsson, Gunnar & Helkimo, M. (1978). Chewing efficiency and state of dentition. A methodologic study. Acta odontologica Scandinavica. 36. 33-41.

CHAPTER 11

PROSTHODONTIC PRESERVATION AND REHABILITATION OF THE EXTRACTION SOCKET - A COMPREHENSIVE REVIEW OF PROSTHETICALLY DRIVEN EXTRACTION SOCKET MANAGEMENT, ALVEOLAR RIDGE PRESERVATION AND REHABILITATION



Dr. Bindu Kamaraj, MDS

Professor

Prosthodontics and Crown & Bridge

Vinayaka Mission's Sankarachariyar Dental College

Vinayaka Mission's Research Foundation

(Deemed To Be University)

Salem, Tamil Nadu

Part I

Biology of Extraction Socket Healing

- Extraction of a tooth initiates a cascade of biological events that culminate in healing of the extraction socket and remodelling of the alveolar ridge. Although this remodelling is a physiological process, it is accompanied by significant reduction in both the horizontal and vertical dimensions of the alveolar process.
- The greatest amount of ridge resorption occurs during the first three to six months following extraction, with the buccal cortical plate being particularly susceptible because of its thin structure and dependence on the periodontal ligament for vascular supply.
- Traditionally, the objective of extraction socket healing was limited to achieving uneventful wound closure.

- *Contemporary Prosthodontics, however, has transformed this concept into prosthetically driven extraction socket management, where preservation of the hard and soft tissue architecture is planned before extraction with the definitive prosthesis in mind. This philosophy recognizes that the extraction socket is not merely a surgical wound but the biological foundation for future prosthetic rehabilitation.*
- From the prosthodontist's perspective, extraction socket preservation extends beyond facilitating implant placement.
- Maintenance of ridge morphology is equally important for complete dentures, removable partial dentures, fixed dental prostheses, and implant-supported restorations. Preservation of ridge contour enhances denture support, retention, and stability; facilitates ideal pontic-site development; improves emergence profiles; and minimizes the need for secondary augmentation procedures.
- The increasing emphasis on aesthetic dentistry has further expanded the role of socket preservation. Maintenance of gingival architecture, interdental papillae, facial soft tissue contours, and ridge form is essential for achieving natural-looking restorations, particularly within the aesthetic zone.
- Immediate provisionalization, ovate pontic development, partial extraction therapy, and digital treatment planning have become integral components of contemporary prosthodontic practice.
- Current evidence indicates that although physiological ridge resorption cannot be completely prevented, appropriately planned atraumatic extraction and alveolar ridge preservation procedures can substantially reduce dimensional changes and improve long-term prosthodontic outcomes. Consequently, socket preservation has become an indispensable component of comprehensive prosthodontic treatment planning.

❖ **Learning Objectives:**

- After reading this chapter, the reader should be able to:
 1. Describe the biological events involved in extraction socket healing.

2. Explain the mechanisms responsible for post-extraction ridge resorption.
3. Discuss the prosthodontic significance of extraction socket preservation.
4. Perform prosthetically driven assessment before tooth extraction.
5. Compare various alveolar ridge preservation techniques and biomaterials.
6. Explain the role of guided bone regeneration and biologic modifiers.
7. Discuss Partial Extraction Therapy and its prosthodontic applications.
8. Describe pontic-site development and immediate ovate pontic techniques.
9. Formulate evidence-based treatment plans for complete dentures, removable partial dentures, fixed prostheses, and implant-supported restorations.
10. Apply current evidence in clinical decision-making for extraction socket rehabilitation.

Historical Perspective

- The understanding of extraction socket healing has evolved considerably over the past century.
- Early prosthodontic concepts focused primarily on replacing missing teeth after healing had occurred, with little attention given to preservation of the residual ridge. The pioneering work of **Atwood** demonstrated that residual ridge resorption is a chronic, cumulative, and irreversible process that profoundly influences the success of complete denture therapy.
- Subsequently, **Schropp and colleagues** quantified the magnitude of dimensional changes following extraction, demonstrating that nearly half of the alveolar ridge width may be lost during the first year, with two-thirds of this loss occurring within the initial three months. These findings fundamentally altered clinical practice by highlighting the importance of early intervention.
- The development of *guided bone regeneration, biomaterials for socket grafting, platelet concentrates, and implant dentistry* shifted

the focus from passive healing to active preservation of ridge architecture.

- More recently, prosthodontic concepts such as immediate ovate pontics, socket-shield therapy, pontic-shield therapy, and prosthetically driven extraction planning have further emphasized preservation of the tissues that support definitive restorations.

Biology of Extraction Socket Healing

- Healing of the extraction socket is a highly coordinated biological process involving inflammation, angiogenesis, bone formation, and remodelling. The sequence of healing occurs in overlapping phases and is influenced by local anatomy, systemic health, surgical trauma, and the presence or absence of grafting procedures.
- **Phase I: Hemostasis (0–24 Hours)** - Immediately after extraction, rupture of blood vessels results in formation of a stable blood clot that occupies the socket. The clot consists of erythrocytes, platelets, fibrin, leukocytes, and plasma proteins. Platelet degranulation releases numerous growth factors, including platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF), transforming growth factor-beta (TGF- β), vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), and insulin-like growth factor (IGF), which initiate wound healing. The fibrin network provides a scaffold for migration of inflammatory cells and mesenchymal stem cells while simultaneously protecting the socket from microbial contamination.
- **Phase II: Inflammatory Phase (1–7 Days)** - Neutrophils predominate during the first 24–48 hours and are gradually replaced by macrophages. Macrophages remove necrotic tissue and release cytokines that regulate fibroblast proliferation and angiogenesis. Granulation tissue progressively replaces the organizing blood clot. Simultaneously, epithelial cells migrate from the wound margins toward the centre of the socket, establishing epithelial continuity within approximately one week under favourable conditions.
- **Phase III: Granulation Tissue Formation (1–3 Weeks)** - The socket becomes highly vascularized through active angiogenesis. Fibroblasts synthesize collagen fibres that gradually replace the fibrin matrix. Mesenchymal stem cells differentiate into osteoblasts,

initiating deposition of woven bone from the socket walls toward the centre. This stage is characterized by rapid cellular proliferation and extracellular matrix formation, making it particularly responsive to biologic modifiers such as platelet-rich fibrin and concentrated growth factors.

- **Phase IV: Bone Formation (3–8 Weeks)** - Woven bone progressively occupies the extraction socket. Osteoblasts deposit immature bone trabeculae that gradually bridge the socket cavity. Although radiographic evidence of bone formation becomes apparent, the newly formed bone remains relatively immature and mechanically weak. The buccal cortical plate undergoes simultaneous external resorption due to loss of periodontal ligament-derived blood supply, explaining the characteristic reduction in ridge width following extraction.
- **Phase V: Bone Remodelling (2–12 Months)** - Immature woven bone is gradually replaced by mature lamellar bone through coordinated osteoclastic and osteoblastic activity. Bone Remodelling continues for several months and may persist throughout life depending upon functional loading. Despite complete osseous healing of the socket, external Remodelling of the alveolar process results in irreversible reduction of ridge dimensions. Horizontal resorption generally exceeds vertical loss, and the facial aspect is affected more severely than the palatal or lingual plate.

Phase	Time	Principal Events	Clinical Significance
Hemostasis	0–24 h	Blood clot formation	Scaffold for healing
Inflammatory	1–7 days	Leukocyte infiltration	Debridement and cytokine release
Granulation	1–3 weeks	Fibroplasia and angiogenesis	Soft tissue organization
Bone formation	3–8 weeks	Woven bone deposition	Initial osseous fill
Remodelling	2–12 months	Lamellar bone formation and ridge Remodelling	Determines final ridge morphology

Phases of Extraction Socket Healing

Biological Basis of Residual Ridge Resorption

- Residual ridge resorption is a multifactorial process influenced by anatomical, biological, mechanical, and prosthetic factors.
- Following extraction, the periodontal ligament disappears, eliminating functional stimulation to bundle bone, which consequently undergoes rapid resorption. The thin buccal cortical plate, composed largely of bundle bone, is therefore particularly vulnerable.
- Histologic studies have shown that reduction in ridge width may reach 3–5 mm during the first six months after extraction, while vertical loss ranges between 1 and 3 mm depending upon socket morphology and local anatomical factors. These dimensional changes adversely affect prosthodontic rehabilitation by compromising ridge form, aesthetics, and biomechanical support.

Parameter	Approximate Change
Horizontal ridge width	29–63% reduction
Vertical ridge height	11–22% reduction
Greatest resorption	First 3–6 months
Most affected surface	Buccal cortical plate

Average Dimensional Changes Following Tooth Extraction

Part II

Prosthodontic Preservation and Rehabilitation

❖ Prosthodontic Significance of Extraction Socket Preservation

- Extraction of a tooth initiates not only biological healing but also irreversible remodelling of the alveolar process. Although socket healing restores osseous continuity, the resulting residual ridge frequently differs considerably from its original morphology. These dimensional alterations have profound prosthodontic implications because the residual ridge forms the biological foundation for all forms of prosthetic rehabilitation.
- Modern prosthodontics therefore advocates **prosthetically driven extraction socket management**, wherein preservation of ridge anatomy begins before extraction and is guided by the definitive

restorative plan. Unlike a purely surgical approach that focuses on osseous regeneration, prosthodontic treatment planning emphasizes preservation of the three-dimensional hard and soft tissue architecture required to achieve long-term functional and aesthetic success.

- The objective of socket preservation extends beyond facilitating implant placement. Preservation of ridge morphology improves denture support, retention, and stability; enhances pontic-site development for fixed prostheses; maintains gingival architecture; reduces the need for secondary augmentation procedures; and contributes to predictable prosthetic outcomes.

❖ **Prosthodontic Implications of Residual Ridge Resorption**

- Residual ridge resorption adversely affects every type of prosthodontic rehabilitation.
- **Complete Denture Prosthodontics** - The residual ridge constitutes the primary denture-bearing area. Progressive loss of ridge height and width results in:
 - Reduced denture support
 - Decreased retention
 - Reduced stability
 - Increased horizontal displacement during mastication
 - Accelerated residual ridge resorption
 - Compromised patient comfort
 - Maintenance of ridge morphology following extraction therefore contributes directly to improved complete denture prognosis.
- **Removable Partial Denture Prosthodontics** - In distal extension removable partial dentures, the residual ridge functions as a secondary support structure. Progressive ridge resorption results in:
 - Increased tissue ward movement
 - Greater rotational forces
 - Occlusal instability
 - Increased stress on abutment teeth
 - Need for frequent relining procedures
 - Preservation of ridge volume minimizes these biomechanical complications.

- **Fixed Dental Prosthodontics** - For fixed partial dentures, ridge collapse produces several aesthetic and functional challenges:
 - Flattened pontic sites
 - Loss of cervical tissue contour
 - Black triangles
 - Poor emergence profile
 - Food impaction
 - Difficulty in fabricating ovate pontics
 - Preservation of socket anatomy permits development of natural-looking pontic sites with improved papillary support.
- **Implant Prosthodontics** - Although implants preserve surrounding bone after osseointegration, physiologic Remodelling occurs before implant placement following extraction.
 - Consequences include:
 - Reduced implant site dimensions
 - Need for ridge augmentation
 - Compromised implant positioning
 - Reduced primary stability
 - Altered emergence profile
 - Aesthetic deficiencies
 - Socket preservation significantly reduces these dimensional changes and facilitates prosthetically ideal implant positioning.

Objectives of Extraction Socket Preservation

1. Hard Tissue Objectives -

The principal hard tissue objectives include:

- Preservation of ridge height
- Maintenance of ridge width
- Prevention of buccal plate collapse
- Preservation of cortical integrity
- Maintenance of adequate bone volume for future prosthetic rehabilitation
- Reduction in future augmentation procedures

2. Soft Tissue Objectives -

Soft tissue preservation aims to:

- Maintain gingival architecture
- Preserve interdental papillae
- Maintain vestibular depth
- Preserve keratinized mucosa
- Support favourable emergence profiles
- Enhance aesthetic outcomes

3. Prosthodontic Objectives -

From the prosthodontic perspective, socket preservation should:

- Improve complete denture support
- Enhance removable partial denture stability
- Preserve pontic-site anatomy
- Facilitate ovate pontic development
- Improve implant positioning and maintain facial aesthetics
- Reduce surgical intervention before prosthetic rehabilitation

Prosthodontic Assessment before Extraction

- Successful rehabilitation begins with comprehensive pre-extraction assessment.

1. Patient Evaluation

The following factors should be recorded:

- Medical history
- Smoking status
- Diabetes control
- Medications
- Previous periodontal therapy
- Patient expectations
- Financial considerations

Systemic conditions influencing wound healing should be identified before extraction

2. Clinical Examination

➤ Tooth Evaluation -

- Strategic importance
- Remaining tooth structure
- Restorability
- Mobility
- Root morphology

➤ Soft Tissue Assessment -

- Gingival phenotype
- Width of keratinized tissue
- Papillary architecture
- Soft tissue thickness
- Presence of inflammation

➤ Ridge Evaluation for Aesthetics -

- Ridge width
- Ridge height
- Existing defects
- Vestibular depth
- Muscle attachments

Particular attention should be paid to:

- Smile line
- Lip support
- Gingival display
- Facial contour
- Symmetry

3. Radiographic Assessment

Radiographic evaluation includes:

➤ Periapical Radiographs: Useful for assessment of

- Root morphology
- Periapical pathology
- Bone levels
- Adjacent structures

- **Cone Beam Computed Tomography (CBCT)** - CBCT provides three-dimensional evaluation of
 - Buccal plate thickness
 - Ridge width
 - Ridge height
 - Bone density
 - Facial bone defects
 - Implant planning

CBCT is particularly valuable in aesthetic-zone rehabilitation.

Decision-Making for Socket Preservation

Socket preservation should be considered in the following situations:

- **Definite Indications** -
 - Delayed implant placement
 - Thin facial cortical plate
 - Aesthetic-zone extraction
 - Buccal plate dehiscence
 - Planned ovate pontic
 - Pontic-site development
 - Distal extension removable partial dentures
 - Patients at high risk for ridge resorption
- **Relative Indications** -
 - Multiple adjacent extractions
 - Thin gingival phenotype
 - Existing periodontal defects
 - Moderate ridge deficiencies
- **Contraindications** - Socket preservation may not be indicated in:
 - Uncontrolled acute infection
 - Extensive socket destruction preventing graft containment
 - Severe systemic disease contraindicating surgery
 - Patients unable to maintain oral hygiene
 - Situations where future prosthetic rehabilitation is not planned

Prosthetically Driven Treatment Planning

- A fundamental principle of contemporary prosthodontics is that every extraction should begin with the question: "What prosthesis will replace the extracted tooth?"
- Treatment planning should therefore precede extraction.
- The definitive prosthetic plan determines:
 - Extraction technique
 - Need for socket grafting
 - Requirement for soft tissue preservation
 - Implant timing
 - Selection of graft materials
 - Use of biologic modifiers
 - Need for provisional restorations
- This philosophy is known as **prosthetically driven extraction planning**.

Treatment Planning According to Definitive Prosthesis

1. **Complete Denture** - Primary objectives include:
 - Preservation of ridge height
 - Maintenance of vestibular depth
 - Prevention of sharp bony projections
 - Preservation of attached mucosa
2. **Removable Partial Denture** - Treatment planning focuses on:
 - Preservation of distal extension ridges
 - Prevention of localized ridge defects
 - Maintenance of favourable tissue support
 - Facilitation of future relining procedures
3. **Fixed Dental Prosthesis** - Treatment planning should preserve:
 - Ridge contour
 - Soft tissue architecture
 - Papillae
 - Cervical emergence profile
- Immediate ovate pontic therapy should be considered whenever aesthetic demands are high.
4. **Implant Prosthesis** - Planning should evaluate:

- Implant position
- Bone volume
- Soft tissue phenotype
- Smile line
- Timing of implant placement
- Need for guided bone regeneration

Atraumatic Tooth Extraction

- Atraumatic extraction represents the first and most important step in socket preservation. Successful preservation begins during extraction rather than after extraction.
 - The objective is preservation of the hard and soft tissues surrounding the tooth while minimizing surgical trauma.
1. **Principles** - Atraumatic extraction aims to:
 - Preserve buccal cortical bone
 - Preserve interdental papillae
 - Maintain gingival margins
 - Avoid excessive flap elevation
 - Preserve socket walls
 - Minimize bone removal
 - Reduce postoperative inflammation
 2. **Instruments Used** - Common instruments include:
 - Periotomes
 - Luxators
 - Physics forceps
 - Fine elevators
 - Microsurgical instruments
 - Piezoelectric surgical units

➤ These instruments permit controlled severance of periodontal ligament fibers while minimizing cortical bone damage.
 3. **Surgical Techniques** - Techniques that improve tissue preservation include:
 - Sectioning multirooted teeth
 - Controlled root removal
 - Avoidance of excessive buccal forces
 - Piezoelectric osteotomy when necessary

- Flapless extraction whenever possible
- Flapless extraction has been associated with better preservation of soft tissue contours and vascular supply.

Alveolar Ridge Preservation (ARP)

1. **Definition** - Alveolar Ridge Preservation (ARP) refers to procedures performed immediately after tooth extraction to minimize physiologic ridge resorption and preserve the dimensions of the extraction socket for future prosthetic rehabilitation.
2. **Biological Rationale** - Following extraction, loss of periodontal ligament blood supply leads to rapid resorption of bundle bone.
 - **ARP attempts to:**
 - Maintain socket volume
 - Preserve ridge contour
 - Support soft tissue architecture
 - Provide scaffold for new bone formation
 - Reduce horizontal and vertical ridge loss
3. **Treatment Objectives** - The objectives of ARP include:
 - Preservation of alveolar dimensions
 - Maintenance of soft tissue contours
 - Facilitation of future implant placement
 - Improved pontic-site development
 - Enhanced denture-bearing area
 - Reduction in future grafting procedures
4. **Indications** - ARP is recommended in:
 - **Implant-Oriented Cases** -
 - Delayed implant placement
 - Immediate implant with facial defects
 - Thin buccal plate
 - Aesthetic-zone rehabilitation
 - **Fixed Prosthodontics** -
 - Ovate pontic development
 - Ridge contour preservation
 - Pontic-site enhancement

- **Removable Prosthodontics -**
 - Distal extension saddle areas
 - Complete denture foundation preservation
 - Prevention of localized ridge collapse

5. Contraindications - Relative contraindications include:

- Active uncontrolled infection
- Inability to achieve graft containment
- Poor patient compliance
- Severe systemic contraindications

6. Clinical Protocol - A typical ARP procedure consists of:

- Atraumatic extraction
- Thorough socket debridement
- Assessment of socket walls
- Placement of graft material
- Membrane placement when indicated
- Soft tissue stabilization
- Tension-free closure or open healing depending on technique
- Periodic postoperative review

7. Expected Clinical Outcomes - Evidence indicates that ARP:

- Reduces horizontal ridge loss
- Minimizes vertical collapse
- Improves soft tissue contour
- Facilitates prosthetically ideal implant positioning
- Reduces need for secondary augmentation
- Improves aesthetic outcomes

➤ Nevertheless, ARP does **not** completely eliminate physiologic Remodelling; rather, it significantly reduces its magnitude.

Prosthetic Modality	Benefit of Socket Preservation
Complete denture	Improved support, retention, and stability
Removable partial denture	Better ridge support and reduced tissue ward movement
Fixed dental prosthesis	Enhanced pontic-site contour and emergence profile
Implant prosthesis	Improved implant positioning and reduced augmentation requirements

Prosthodontic Benefits of Alveolar Ridge Preservation

❖ **Clinical Pearls**

- ✓ Every extraction should be planned according to the definitive prosthesis.
- ✓ Preservation begins with atraumatic extraction, not with graft placement.
- ✓ The buccal cortical plate is the most critical structure to preserve.
- ✓ Flapless extraction should be considered whenever feasible.
- ✓ Socket preservation benefits complete dentures, removable partial dentures, fixed prostheses, and implants alike.
- ✓ Ridge preservation reduces—but does not eliminate—post-extraction Remodelling.

Part III**Prosthodontic Preservation & Rehabilitation of the Extraction Socket****Socket Preservation Biomaterials**

- Alveolar ridge preservation (ARP) aims to minimize post-extraction dimensional changes by providing a scaffold for bone regeneration and maintaining the contour of the residual ridge. Numerous grafting materials have been investigated for this purpose. Although no single biomaterial has demonstrated universal superiority, appropriate material selection based on the definitive prosthetic treatment plan significantly enhances clinical outcomes.
- From a prosthodontic perspective, the ideal graft material should:
 - Preserve ridge dimensions during healing
 - Support new bone formation
 - Maintain soft tissue contour
 - Minimize patient morbidity
 - Facilitate future implant placement or pontic-site development
 - Undergo controlled resorption while being replaced by vital bone
- The choice of graft material depends on socket morphology, aesthetic requirements, timing of implant placement, systemic factors, and the intended prosthetic rehabilitation.

Classification of Bone Graft Materials

- Bone graft materials are broadly classified into:
 1. Autogenous bone grafts
 2. Allografts
 3. Xenografts
 4. Alloplastic materials
 5. Composite grafts
- Each possesses distinct biological properties and clinical applications.
- 1. Autogenous Bone Grafts -**
 - ❖ **Definition** - Autogenous grafts are harvested from the same individual receiving treatment and remain the **gold standard** because they possess osteogenic, osteoinductive, and osteoconductive properties.
 - ❖ **Common Donor Sites -**
 - **Intraoral**
 - Mandibular symphysis
 - Mandibular ramus
 - Maxillary tuberosity
 - Extraction sites
 - **Extraoral**
 - Iliac crest
 - Calvarium
 - Tibia (selected cases)
 - ❖ **Advantages -**
 - Osteogenic potential
 - Osteoinductive growth factors
 - Excellent biocompatibility
 - No risk of disease transmission
 - ❖ **Disadvantages -**
 - Additional surgical site
 - Donor-site morbidity
 - Limited quantity
 - Increased surgical time
 - Greater postoperative discomfort

- Because of these disadvantages, autogenous bone is generally reserved for larger defects rather than routine socket preservation.

2. Allografts -

- Allografts are obtained from human donors and processed through accredited tissue banks.
- Common forms include:
 - Freeze-Dried Bone Allograft (FDBA)
 - Demineralized Freeze-Dried Bone Allograft (DFDBA)

❖ Biological Properties -

FDBA primarily provides osteoconduction, whereas DFDBA may exhibit osteoinductive potential due to exposure of bone morphogenetic proteins during demineralization.

❖ Advantages -

- No donor-site surgery
- Unlimited availability
- Good handling characteristics
- Favourable clinical evidence
- Suitable for delayed implant placement

❖ Limitations -

- Variable osteoinductive potential
- Slow Remodelling
- Minimal risk of disease transmission despite extensive processing

3. Xenografts -

- Xenografts are derived from another species, most commonly bovine bone.
- Examples include:
 - Deproteinized bovine bone mineral (DBBM)
 - Porcine-derived bone substitutes

❖ **Biological Characteristics** - These materials primarily function as osteoconductive scaffolds and are characterized by slow resorption.

❖ Advantages -

- Excellent space maintenance
- Preservation of ridge contour
- Favourable volumetric stability
- Widely documented clinical success

❖ **Limitations -**

- Slow turnover
- Residual graft particles may persist for years
- Lack of osteogenic properties
- Xenografts are particularly useful when preservation of ridge volume is a priority in the aesthetic zone.

4. Alloplastic Materials -

- Synthetic bone substitutes eliminate concerns regarding donor-site morbidity and disease transmission.
- Common materials include:
 - Hydroxyapatite
 - β -Tricalcium phosphate (β -TCP)
 - Biphasic calcium phosphate
 - Bioactive glass

❖ **Advantages -**

- Unlimited availability
- Excellent safety profile
- Controlled manufacturing
- No ethical concerns

❖ **Disadvantages -**

- Variable resorption rates
- Primarily osteoconductive
- Mechanical properties differ among products

Material	Osteo genic	Osteo inductive	Osteo conductive	Major Advantage	Major Limitation
Autogenous	✓	✓	✓	Gold standard	Donor-site morbidity
Allograft	✗	Variable	✓	No second surgery	Variable induction
Xenograft	✗	✗	✓	Excellent space maintenance	Slow resorption
Alloplast	✗	✗	✓	Unlimited availability	Variable remodelling

Comparison of Graft Materials

Barrier Membranes and Guided Bone Regeneration (GBR)

- Barrier membranes play an essential role in ***Guided Bone Regeneration (GBR)*** by preventing epithelial and connective tissue migration into the extraction socket while maintaining space for bone regeneration.
- ❖ **Biological Principle** - Guided bone regeneration is based on selective cell repopulation. Osteogenic cells originating from the bone are allowed to populate the socket, whereas rapidly proliferating epithelial cells are excluded.
- ❖ **Types of Membranes** -
 1. **Resorbable Membranes:**
 - **Examples** -
 - Collagen membranes
 - Pericardium-derived membranes
 - **Advantages** -
 - No second surgery
 - Excellent tissue compatibility
 - Reduced patient morbidity
 - Ease of use
 - **Limitations** -
 - Limited mechanical stability
 - Variable degradation rates
 2. **Non-Resorbable Membranes:**
 - **Examples** -
 - Expanded PTFE (ePTFE)
 - Dense PTFE (dPTFE)
 - Titanium-reinforced PTFE
 - **Advantages** -
 - Superior space maintenance
 - Predictable ridge contour
 - Suitable for larger defects
 - **Limitations** -
 - Second surgical procedure for removal
 - Risk of membrane exposure
 - Greater patient discomfort

- ❖ **Prosthodontic Significance of GBR** - Guided bone regeneration contributes to:
 - Better implant positioning
 - Preservation of facial contour
 - Improved pontic-site anatomy
 - Reduced augmentation procedures
 - Enhanced aesthetic outcomes
- Current evidence supports the combined use of graft materials and barrier membranes in situations where maintenance of ridge contour is critical.

Biologic Modifiers

- Biologic modifiers accelerate wound healing through release of growth factors that promote angiogenesis, fibroblast proliferation, and osteogenesis.
- 1. **Platelet-Rich Fibrin (PRF) and Advanced Platelet Concentrates**
 - Platelet-rich fibrin is an autologous fibrin matrix obtained without anticoagulants. It contains:
 - Platelets
 - Leukocytes
 - Growth factors
 - Cytokines
 - Fibrin scaffold
- ❖ **Growth Factors Released** -
 - Platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF)
 - Transforming growth factor- β
 - Vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF)
 - Epidermal growth factor (EGF)
- ❖ **Clinical Benefits** -
 - Enhanced angiogenesis
 - Improved soft tissue healing
 - Reduced postoperative pain
 - Improved patient comfort
 - Accelerated wound maturation

- PRF is frequently used as an adjunct to socket grafting rather than as a substitute for graft materials.

2. Advanced Platelet Concentrates - Newer preparations include:

- Advanced PRF (A-PRF)
- Injectable PRF (i-PRF)
- Concentrated Growth Factors (CGF)
- These preparations prolong growth-factor release and improve regenerative potential.

Partial Extraction Therapy (PET)

- Partial Extraction Therapy represents a paradigm shift in prosthodontic ridge preservation. Instead of complete extraction, a strategically retained root fragment preserves the periodontal ligament, bundle bone, and facial cortical plate, thereby minimizing post-extraction ridge collapse.
- PET is particularly valuable in the aesthetic zone, where preservation of facial contour is critical.

❖ **Classification of PET** - PET includes:

- Root Submergence Technique
- Socket-Shield Technique
- Pontic-Shield Technique

1. Root Submergence Technique - The root is decoronated and intentionally retained beneath the soft tissues.

❖ **Indications** -

- Complete denture overdentures
- Pontic-site preservation
- Prevention of ridge collapse
- Preservation of alveolar process

❖ **Advantages** -

- Maintenance of periodontal ligament
- Preservation of bundle bone
- Reduced ridge resorption

❖ **Limitations** -

- Requires healthy retained root

- Risk of endodontic complications
- 2. **Socket-Shield Technique** - The Socket-Shield Technique involves intentional retention of the facial portion of the root while placing an implant palatal to the retained fragment.
 - ❖ **Biological Basis** - The retained root fragment preserves:
 - Periodontal ligament
 - Bundle bone
 - Buccal cortical plate
 - Gingival contour
 - ❖ **Prosthodontic Advantages** -
 - Superior aesthetics
 - Stable emergence profile
 - Reduced facial collapse
 - Better papillary preservation
 - Reduced need for connective tissue grafting
 - ❖ **Limitations** -
 - Technique sensitive
 - Requires experienced operator
 - Limited long-term evidence
- 3. **Pontic-Shield Technique** -
 - Pontic-Shield Therapy extends PET to fixed prosthodontics.
 - Instead of supporting an implant, the retained facial root fragment preserves tissues beneath an ovate pontic.
 - ❖ **Advantages** -
 - Excellent pontic-site aesthetics
 - Stable gingival contour
 - Reduced soft tissue collapse
 - Improved emergence profile
 - Simplified ovate pontic development
 - Initial reports demonstrate encouraging aesthetic outcomes, although long-term prospective studies remain limited.

Technique	Prosthetic Application	Principal Advantage
Root Submergence	Denture and pontic sites	Ridge preservation
Socket Shield	Implant restorations	Buccal contour preservation
Pontic Shield	Fixed dental prosthesis	Pontic-site development

*Partial Extraction Therapy***Immediate Implant Placement**

- Immediate implant placement involves insertion of an implant at the time of tooth extraction.
- ❖ **Advantages -**
 - Reduced treatment time
 - Preservation of gingival architecture
 - Improved patient acceptance
 - Reduced number of surgical procedures
- ❖ **Limitations -**
 - Does not completely prevent ridge Remodelling
 - Frequently requires grafting
 - Technique sensitive
 - Demands careful case selection
- Successful outcomes depend upon atraumatic extraction, intact socket walls, favourable soft tissue phenotype, and prosthetically driven implant positioning.

Immediate Ovate Pontic

- Immediate ovate pontics have become an important prosthodontic method for preserving soft tissue architecture following anterior tooth extraction.
- ❖ **Biological Principle -** The provisional ovate pontic supports healing soft tissues and prevents collapse of the gingival contour.
- ❖ **Clinical Protocol -**
 - Atraumatic extraction
 - Socket grafting
 - Fabrication of provisional restoration
 - Immediate insertion of ovate pontic
 - Progressive tissue conditioning

❖ **Advantages -**

- Maintenance of papillae
 - Reduced black triangles
 - Excellent emergence profile
 - Improved aesthetic integration
 - Reduced need for secondary soft tissue procedures
- Recent prospective studies have demonstrated significantly improved ridge contour when immediate ovate pontics are combined with socket preservation procedures.

Prosthodontic Decision-Making

- Selection of socket preservation procedures should be guided by the definitive prosthesis.

Final Prosthesis	Recommended Socket Management
Complete denture	Preserve ridge height and vestibular depth
Removable partial denture	Maintain distal extension support
Fixed dental prosthesis	Develop ideal pontic site
Implant-supported prosthesis	Preserve bone and soft tissue volume

Clinical Pearls -

- ✓ Prosthetic planning should always precede extraction.
- ✓ Selection of graft material depends on the definitive prosthesis rather than the biomaterial alone.
- ✓ Barrier membranes improve ridge preservation when combined with grafts.
- ✓ PRF enhances soft tissue healing but should be viewed as an adjunctive therapy.
- ✓ Partial Extraction Therapy is highly effective in selected aesthetic cases but requires meticulous technique.
- ✓ Immediate ovate pontics significantly improve pontic-site development and aesthetic outcomes.

Part IV

Prosthodontic Preservation & Rehabilitation of the Extraction Socket

Rehabilitation of the Healed Extraction Socket

- Following completion of socket healing, the preserved ridge forms the biological and biomechanical foundation for definitive prosthodontic rehabilitation. Although extraction socket preservation cannot entirely eliminate physiologic Remodelling, it significantly reduces dimensional changes, facilitating predictable rehabilitation with complete dentures, removable partial dentures, fixed dental prostheses, and implant-supported restorations.
- The prosthodontist must evaluate the healed ridge with respect to:
 - Residual ridge morphology
 - Soft tissue architecture
 - Vestibular depth
 - Keratinized tissue width
 - Bone quality and quantity
 - Inter-arch space
 - Occlusal relationships
 - Aesthetic requirements
- The definitive prosthetic design should always be based on a comprehensive clinical and radiographic assessment.
- 1. **Complete Denture Prosthodontics** - Residual ridge morphology is the principal determinant of complete denture support, retention, and stability. Progressive residual ridge resorption remains one of the greatest challenges in complete denture therapy and is associated with reduced masticatory efficiency, instability during function, and compromised patient satisfaction.
- ❖ **Prosthodontic Benefits of Socket Preservation** - Preservation of extraction sockets contributes to:
 - Increased denture-bearing surface area
 - Improved stress distribution
 - Enhanced border seal
 - Better retention
 - Improved stability

- Reduced need for early relining
- Improved patient comfort
- Preservation of vestibular depth and ridge contour is particularly advantageous in the mandible, where residual ridge resorption is generally more rapid than in the maxilla.
- ❖ **Long-Term Maintenance** - Patients rehabilitated with complete dentures require periodic review for:
 - Residual ridge resorption
 - Occlusal wear
 - Denture instability
 - Tissue changes
 - Need for relining or rebasing
- Even following successful socket preservation, physiological Remodelling continues throughout life and must be monitored.
- 2. **Removable Partial Denture Prosthodontics** - In distal extension removable partial dentures, the residual ridge functions together with the abutment teeth to support occlusal loads. Preservation of ridge anatomy therefore contributes directly to favourable biomechanical performance.
- ❖ **Clinical Advantages** - Socket preservation offers several benefits:
 - Reduced tissue-ward movement
 - Improved denture stability
 - Better support for distal extension bases
 - Reduced torque on abutment teeth
 - Improved patient comfort
 - Decreased frequency of relining procedures
- Maintenance of ridge form also facilitates future conversion to implant-assisted removable partial dentures when indicated.
- 3. **Fixed Dental Prosthodontics**
- For fixed dental prostheses, preservation of ridge morphology is essential for both function and aesthetics.
- Loss of ridge volume following extraction may result in:
 - Ridge defects
 - Black triangles
 - Poor cervical contour

- Food impaction
 - Unnatural emergence profile
 - Aesthetic compromise
- ❖ **Pontic Site Development** - Socket preservation allows the development of ideal pontic sites capable of supporting ovate pontics with natural gingival contours.
- ❖ **Advantages** -
- Improved papillary support
 - Enhanced cervical contour
 - Better emergence profile
 - Improved phonetics
 - Reduced food impaction
 - Superior aesthetics
- Immediate ovate pontics placed following atraumatic extraction and socket grafting have demonstrated excellent maintenance of soft tissue contours during healing.
4. **Implant Prosthodontics** - Implant-supported restorations represent one of the principal indications for extraction socket preservation.
- Successful implant rehabilitation depends upon:
- Adequate bone volume
 - Proper implant positioning
 - Stable peri-implant soft tissues
 - Favourable emergence profile
 - Long-term peri-implant health
- ❖ **Benefits of Ridge Preservation** - Compared with spontaneous healing, ridge preservation generally provides:
- Improved implant positioning
 - Reduced augmentation procedures
 - Greater prosthetic flexibility
 - Better aesthetic outcomes
 - Improved soft tissue support
 - Enhanced emergence profiles

- However, clinicians should recognize that alveolar ridge preservation reduces — but does not completely prevent — physiologic remodelling.

❖ **Timing of Implant Placement** - Implant placement may be classified as:

Timing	Description
Immediate	At extraction
Early	4–8 weeks
Delayed	3–6 months
Late	After complete healing

- Selection depends upon:
 - Socket morphology
 - Soft tissue condition
 - Presence of infection
 - Buccal plate integrity
 - Patient-related factors
 - Prosthetic requirements
- Prosthetically driven implant positioning remains more important than timing alone.
- ❖ **Residual Ridge Resorption** - Residual ridge resorption is a chronic, cumulative, and irreversible process that continues throughout life.
- Although socket preservation significantly reduces early dimensional changes, continued remodelling occurs because of:
 - Functional loading
 - Systemic factors
 - Age-related bone metabolism
 - Prosthesis-induced stress
 - Occlusal factors
- Patients should therefore be informed that socket preservation minimizes—but does not eliminate—future ridge resorption.
- ❖ **Maintenance Protocol** - Long-term maintenance should include:
 - **Annual Clinical Evaluation**
 - Ridge morphology
 - Soft tissue health

- Prosthesis stability
- Occlusion
- Oral hygiene
- **Implant Maintenance** - Assessment should include:
 - Peri-implant probing
 - Radiographic evaluation
 - Occlusal analysis
 - Prosthetic screw integrity
 - Hygiene reinforcement
- **Denture Maintenance** - Periodic:
 - Relining
 - Rebasing
 - Occlusal adjustment
 - Replacement when indicated

Digital Prosthodontics

- Digital technologies have transformed extraction socket management and prosthodontic rehabilitation.
- **Applications** include:
 - Digital impressions
 - Intraoral scanning
 - CBCT-guided planning
 - Virtual implant planning
 - Surgical guides
 - CAD-CAM provisional restorations
 - Digital smile design
- Integration of digital workflows permits prosthetically driven planning before extraction and enhances communication among surgeons, prosthodontists, and dental technicians.

Artificial Intelligence in Prosthodontics

- Emerging applications include:
 - Automated implant planning
 - Prediction of ridge resorption
 - Prosthesis design optimization

- Occlusal analysis
 - Treatment simulation
 - Risk assessment
- Although still evolving, Artificial Intelligence is expected to improve diagnostic accuracy and treatment predictability.

Tissue Engineering and Future Directions

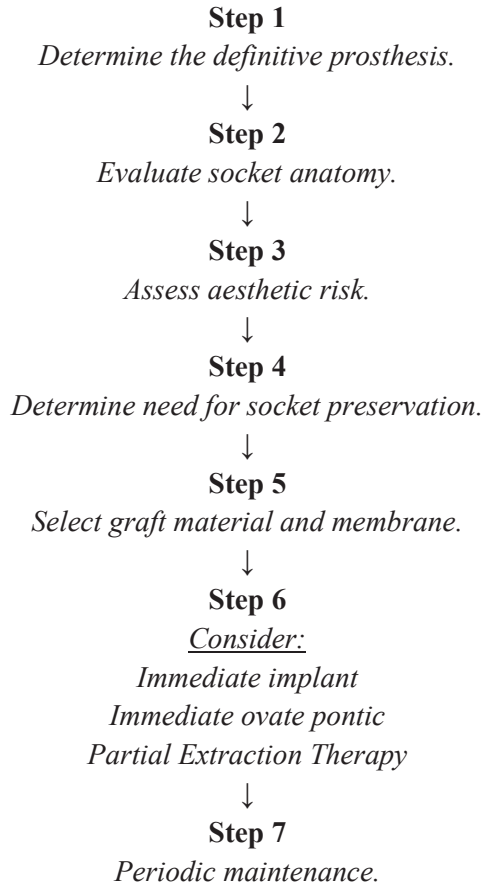
- Contemporary research is directed toward biologically enhanced ridge preservation using:
- Stem-cell therapy
 - Three-dimensional printed scaffolds
 - Bioactive ceramics
 - Growth factor delivery systems
 - Biomimetic matrices
 - Customized regenerative approaches
- These technologies aim to regenerate rather than merely preserve the extraction socket.

Evidence-Based Prosthodontic Considerations

- Current literature supports several important clinical conclusions:
1. *Atraumatic extraction significantly improves preservation of hard and soft tissues.*
 2. *Alveolar ridge preservation reduces post-extraction dimensional changes.*
 3. *Combined use of graft materials and barrier membranes generally provides superior outcomes compared with spontaneous healing.*
 4. *Platelet-rich fibrin enhances soft tissue healing but is considered an adjunct rather than a replacement for grafting.*
 5. *Partial Extraction Therapy offers excellent aesthetic outcomes in carefully selected cases but remains technique-sensitive.*
 6. *Immediate ovate pontics improve pontic-site development and soft tissue architecture.*

7. *Prosthetically driven treatment planning should precede every extraction.*

Clinical Decision-Making



Clinical Pearls -

- ✓ Every extraction should be planned prosthetically.
- ✓ Preservation begins before extraction.
- ✓ Preserve the facial cortical plate whenever possible.
- ✓ Flapless extraction minimizes surgical trauma.
- ✓ Ridge preservation benefits all prosthetic treatment modalities—not only implant therapy.
- ✓ Graft selection should be based on prosthetic objectives rather than biomaterial characteristics alone.

- ✓ Immediate ovate pontics provide superior pontic-site development.
- ✓ Partial Extraction Therapy requires careful case selection.
- ✓ Digital planning enhances treatment predictability.
- ✓ Long-term maintenance is essential because physiologic Remodelling continues despite successful preservation.

Key Points

- *Extraction socket preservation has become an integral component of contemporary prosthodontics.*
- *Residual ridge resorption begins immediately following extraction.*
- *Atraumatic extraction is the foundation of successful preservation.*
- *Alveolar ridge preservation significantly reduces post-extraction dimensional changes.*
- *Socket preservation facilitates rehabilitation with complete dentures, removable partial dentures, fixed dental prostheses, and implant-supported restorations.*
- *Prosthetically driven treatment planning improves functional and aesthetic outcomes.*
- *Emerging regenerative techniques are expected to further improve preservation of ridge morphology.*

Conclusion

- Preservation and rehabilitation of the extraction socket have become integral components of contemporary prosthodontic practice. Modern treatment philosophy advocates a prosthetically driven approach in which the definitive restorative plan guides extraction, socket management, and subsequent rehabilitation. Consequently, preservation of the hard and soft tissue architecture begins before tooth extraction and continues throughout the course of prosthetic treatment.
- Advances in atraumatic extraction techniques, alveolar ridge preservation, guided bone regeneration, biologic modifiers, Partial Extraction Therapy, immediate ovate pontics, and digital treatment planning have significantly enhanced the clinician's ability to preserve ridge morphology and optimize prosthodontic outcomes. These strategies effectively reduce post-extraction ridge resorption,

maintain favourable soft tissue contours, facilitate prosthetically ideal implant positioning and pontic-site development, and minimize the need for secondary augmentation procedures.

- Although post-extraction physiological remodelling is an inevitable biological process, substantial evidence demonstrates that appropriate socket preservation protocols can significantly limit dimensional changes of the alveolar ridge and improve the long-term prognosis of complete dentures, removable partial dentures, fixed dental prostheses, and implant-supported restorations.
- Ultimately, the extraction socket should be regarded not merely as a surgical wound, but as the biological foundation for successful prosthodontic rehabilitation. Careful preservation of ridge architecture through evidence-based, prosthetically guided treatment planning is fundamental to achieving predictable functional, aesthetic, and long-term clinical success.

BIBLIOGRAPHY:

1. Zarb GA, Hobkirk JA, Eckert SE, Jacob RF, editors. *Prosthodontic Treatment for Edentulous Patients: Complete Dentures and Implant-Supported Prostheses*. 13th ed. St. Louis: Elsevier Mosby; 2013
2. Carr AB, Brown DT, editors. *McCracken's Removable Partial Prosthodontics*. 13th ed. St. Louis: Elsevier; 2016
3. Rosenstiel SF, Land MF, Fujimoto J. *Contemporary Fixed Prosthodontics*. 6th ed. St. Louis: Elsevier; 2022
4. Misch CE. *Contemporary Implant Dentistry*. 3rd ed. St. Louis: Mosby Elsevier; 2008
5. Dawson PE. *Functional Occlusion: From TMJ to Smile Design*. St. Louis: Mosby Elsevier; 2007
6. Schropp L, Wenzel A, Kostopoulos L, Karring T. Bone healing and soft tissue contour changes following single-tooth extraction: a clinical and radiographic 12-month prospective study. *Int J Periodontics Restorative Dent*. 2003;23(4):313–323
7. Amler MH. The time sequence of tissue regeneration in human extraction wounds. *Oral Surg Oral Med Oral Pathol*. 1969;27(3):309–318

8. Cardaropoli G, Araújo MG, Lindhe J. Dynamics of bone tissue formation in tooth extraction sites: an experimental study in dogs. *J Clin Periodontol*. 2003;30(9):809–818
9. Araújo MG, Lindhe J. Dimensional ridge alterations following tooth extraction: an experimental study in the dog. *J Clin Periodontol*. 2005;32(2):212–218
10. Araújo MG, Lindhe J. Ridge alterations following tooth extraction with and without flap elevation: an experimental study in dogs. *Clin Oral Implants Res*. 2009;20(6):545–549
11. Tan WL, Wong TLT, Wong MCM, Lang NP. A systematic review of post-extractional alveolar hard and soft tissue dimensional changes in humans. *Clin Oral Implants Res*. 2012;23(Suppl 5):1–21
12. Avila-Ortiz G, Elangovan S, Kramer KWO, Blanchette D, Dawson DV. Effect of alveolar ridge preservation after tooth extraction: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Dent Res*. 2014;93(10):950–958
13. Vignoletti F, Matesanz P, Rodrigo D, Figuero E, Martin C, Sanz M. Surgical protocols for ridge preservation after tooth extraction: a systematic review. *Clin Oral Implants Res*. 2012;23(Suppl 5):22–38
14. Darby I, Chen ST, Buser D. Ridge preservation techniques for implant therapy. *Int J Oral Maxillofac Implants*. 2009;24(Suppl):260–271
15. Jambhekar S, Kernén F, Bidra AS. Clinical and histological outcomes of socket grafting after flapless tooth extraction: a systematic review of randomized controlled clinical trials. *J Prosthet Dent*. 2015;113(5):371–382
16. Chen ST, Buser D. Esthetic outcomes following immediate and early implant placement in the anterior maxilla: a systematic review. *Int J Oral Maxillofac Implants*. 2014;29(Suppl):186–215.
17. Buser D, Martin W, Belser UC. Optimizing esthetics for implant restorations in the anterior maxilla: anatomic and surgical considerations. *Periodontol 2000*. 2004; 36:61–74

18. Atwood DA. Some clinical factors related to rate of resorption of residual ridges. *J Prosthet Dent*. 1962; 12:441–450
19. Atwood DA. Reduction of residual ridges: a major oral disease entity. *J Prosthet Dent*. 1971;26(3):266–279
20. Joseph AM. Partial Extraction Therapy (PET): an insight into the current prosthodontic strategy for ridge preservation in the esthetic zone. *J Indian Prosthodont Soc*. 2018;18(Suppl 2): S76–S77
21. Gluckman H, Du Toit J, Salama M. The Pontic-Shield: Partial Extraction Therapy for ridge preservation and pontic site development. *Int J Periodontics Restorative Dent*. 2016;36(3):417–423
22. Song SJ, Tao G, Shariff J, Tarnow DP, Bittner N. Evaluation of dimensional changes and ridge contour around ovate pontics inserted immediately after extraction with alveolar ridge preservation in the esthetic zone. *Int J Periodontics Restorative Dent*. 2022;42(1):83–91
23. Dahlin C, Linde A, Gottlow J, Nyman S. Healing of bone defects by guided tissue regeneration. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 1988;81(5):672–676
24. Urban IA. *Vertical and Horizontal Ridge Augmentation*. Chicago: Quintessence Publishing; 2017
25. Froum SJ, Wallace SS, Elian N, Cho SC, Tarnow DP. Guided bone regeneration and bone grafting principles in implant dentistry
26. Carlsson GE, Omar R. The future of complete dentures in oral rehabilitation. *J Oral Rehabil*. 2010;37(2):143–156
27. Chen ST, Buser D. Clinical concepts for immediate implant placement and restoration
28. Buser D, Chen ST, Weber HP, Belser UC. Early implant placement following single-tooth extraction in the esthetic zone
29. Tarnow DP, Chu SJ, Salama MA, Stappert CFJ, Salama H, Garber DA, et al. Flapless post-extraction socket implant placement in the esthetic zone

30. Lang NP, Pun L, Lau KY, Li KY, Wong MCM. A systematic review on survival and success rates of implants placed immediately into fresh extraction sockets
31. Esposito M, Grusovin MG, Felice P, Karatzopoulos G, Worthington HV, Coulthard P. Interventions for replacing missing teeth: horizontal and vertical bone augmentation techniques for dental implant treatment. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*
32. Tonetti MS, Hämmerle CHF. Advances in bone augmentation to enable dental implant placement
33. Hammerle CHF, Araújo MG, Simion M. Evidence-based knowledge on the biology and treatment of extraction sockets
34. Buser D, Sennerby L, De Bruyn H. Modern implant dentistry and ridge preservation concepts
35. Sanz M, Cecchinato D, Ferrus J, Pjetursson EB, Lang NP, Lindhe J. A prospective clinical study of ridge alterations after tooth extraction
36. Araújo MG, Silva CO, Misawa M, Sukekava F. Alveolar socket healing: what can we learn?
37. Fickl S, Zuhr O, Wachtel H, Bolz W, Huerzeler MB. Hard tissue alterations after socket preservation
38. Pagni G, Pellegrini G, Giannobile WV, Rasperini G. Post-extraction alveolar ridge preservation: biological basis and treatments
39. El Chaar E, Castano E, Atieh M. Current concepts in extraction socket preservation
40. Bidra AS, Rungruanganunt P. Prosthodontic considerations in implant site preservation

CHAPTER 12

THE ROLE OF THE PUBLIC HEALTH DENTIST IN DENTAL EXTRACTIONS



Dr Subodh Kumar, MDS

Associate Professor

Public Health Dentistry

Mithila Dental College & Hospital

Lalit Narayan Mithila University

Kameshwar Nagar, Darbhanga, Bihar



Dr Lavanya Rohatgi, MDS

Assistant Professor

Public Health Dentistry

Mithila Dental College & Hospital

Lalit Narayan Mithila University

Kameshwar Nagar, Darbhanga, Bihar

India's Oral Health Overview

- Over the past few decades, health in India is gaining less importance, and oral health, the least. Oral diseases are still a burden for developing countries such as India, especially among the rural masses.
- Prevalence of oral diseases is very high in India with dental caries (50%, 52.5%, 61.4%, 79.2%, and 84.7% in 5, 12, 15, 35–44, and 65–74 years old, respectively) and periodontal diseases (55.4%, 89.2%,

and 79.4% in 12, 35–44, and 65–74 years old, respectively) as the two most common oral diseases.

- It is well documented that there is an association of oral health with various systemic conditions such as diabetes, cardiovascular disorders, pregnancy, and its impact on quality of life.
- Orofacial pain and loss of sensorimotor functions limit food choices and the pleasures of eating, restrict social contact, and inhibit intimacy.

Role of the Public Health Dentist

- The main role of Public Health Dentistry is to understand the distribution and determinants of oral diseases and to educate, motivate, and promote oral health in diverse populations.
- Over the past decades, research and practice in Dental Public Health (DPH) have been concentrated upon the two major problems – dental caries and periodontal disease.
- According to estimates, about 50% of school children are suffering from dental caries and more than 90% of adults have periodontal diseases. This increase in prevalence of dental diseases is observed parallel to the rapid nutrition transition in the recent decades and may also be one of its consequences.
- Over the past 15–20 years, the context of DPH programs has been rapidly changing in India. As a result, scope and content of dental programs have also changed.
- The Public Dental Health professional, with his/her understanding of dental problems and his/her competence in dealing with community affairs, can be a ***decisive influence*** in the development of health programs which are the best interests of both the public and the dental profession.

Ethics & Consent in Public Health Dentistry

- Progress in health care technologies has enabled patients to be better informed about all aspects of health care.
- Patient's informed consent is a ***legal regulation and a moral principle*** which represents patient's rights to take part in the clinical decisions concerning their treatment. This principle reflects the right

of patients to decide what happens to their own bodies and is an essential part of good practice.

- ❖ **Informed consent implies** the patient is informed about:
 - What is the treatment that is now being conducted
 - It is needed because of existing alternatives
 - Risks and benefits
 - Cost involves
- ❖ **When Informed Consent is Required -**
 - **Invasive and Complex Procedures:** Tooth extractions, root canals, dental implants, and periodontal surgery.
 - **Sedation and Anesthesia:** Any use of conscious sedation, general anaesthesia, or nitrous oxide.
 - **Orthodontics:** Braces, clear aligners, and major bite-correction plans.
 - **Significant or Irreversible Treatment:** Procedures altering tooth structure or overall dental arrangement where alternative choices exist.

Public Health Dentistry & Socio-Economic Factor as a challenge to Dental Extraction

- Tooth extraction remains a fundamental procedure in oral and maxillofacial surgery. It is commonly used to treat clinical issues such as severe decay, advanced gum disease, and facial trauma, alongside non-clinical challenges like financial constraints, patient refusal of alternative treatments, and dental fear.
- The specific reasons for extraction vary across different age demographics due to shifting oral pathologies, systemic medical conditions, and general access to care. Recent global data shows that *post-2023 economic pressures, including inflation and the long-term impact of COVID-19*, have caused a rise in extractions driven by non-clinical factors, highlighting ongoing disparities in healthcare access across poorer regions.
- According to the *World Health Organization's 2025* report on oral health, untreated dental diseases affect nearly 3.7 billion individuals worldwide, causing an annual economic burden of over \$710 billion and disproportionately lowering productivity in developing nations

like India. As a result, lower socio-economic status remains strongly tied to higher extraction rates, as patients frequently opt for affordable extractions over expensive restorative procedures.

Vulnerable Patients, Geriatric Patients, Mentally Unstable & Economically – Marginalized Patients

Triage, Referral, Preventive and Curative Management -

- Older adults experience major obstacles when accessing dental care, including systemic medical conditions, cognitive impairments like dementia, and psychological challenges such as depression, fear, and anxiety.
- *Financial limitations and inadequate insurance coverage* restrict their access to services, while managing multiple chronic diseases and taking numerous daily medications complicate their treatment and lower the priority placed on oral hygiene.
- On a systemic level, barriers such as *poor referral networks, a shortage of geriatric dental specialists, and a lack of integration between medical and dental care further restrict access*, which is often worsened by a perceived lack of need for treatment among both patients and their caregivers.
- Additionally, mental or psychiatric illnesses are defined as health conditions characterized by alterations in thinking, mood, perception, or behaviour - or a combination of these elements - which are directly linked to personal distress or impaired daily functioning.
- *This sharp disparity between urban and rural areas, coupled with widespread poverty and limited health literacy in countryside communities, creates a massive gap in oral healthcare coverage.*
- Research indicates a growing burden of dental diseases among these underserved populations, characterized by a high prevalence of tooth decay and gum disease, while India specifically faces a severe crisis as the global capital for oral cancer due to widespread tobacco use.
- Despite these pressing needs, individuals in remote or low-income segments frequently live without any dental treatment - for instance, a rural outreach initiative revealed that over 93% of surveyed patients had never accessed dental care in their lives.

Public Health Dentists Possess a Diverse Skill Set –

- This includes *strategic planning, resource management, public communication, policy advocacy, data analysis, and quality assurance* for dental care systems.
- They are strong proponents of preventive care and multidisciplinary integration within the oral healthcare delivery system.
- Furthermore, these professionals play a key role in educating both dental clinicians and students regarding community oral health initiatives. Their field-level duties involve administering crucial *preventive treatments*, such as atraumatic restorative therapies, oral hygiene education, and structured tobacco cessation programmes
- For advanced or highly complex cases, they utilize an organized referral framework to guide patients toward specialized dental surgeons.

The role and purpose of Mobile Dental Clinics

Proficiency, Resources and Skills -

- Mobile clinics frequently deliver tooth extraction services for patients presenting with severe decay or advanced dental infections that cannot be resolved through simple restorative care.
- Operating within these mobile units, dentists perform straightforward extractions of loose or non-salvageable teeth using Local Anesthesia. These units are fully equipped with essential anesthetic supplies and specialized surgical instruments, such as forceps and elevators, to ensure safe tooth removal.
- *This targeted intervention is critical for providing immediate pain relief and preventing the spread of acute infections, particularly in remote communities lacking access to advanced dental infrastructure.*
- However, due to the limited equipment available in a mobile setup, extractions are strictly restricted to uncomplicated cases - complex procedures, such as surgical extractions or impacted wisdom teeth that demand sophisticated surgical tools, are systematically referred to a hospital.

Primary Oral Health Care and Infection Control in the Field

- Standard precautions serve as the foundation of any infection control programme, requiring the continuous use of personal protective equipment (PPE) during all oral healthcare procedures, irrespective of a patient's known or suspected infection status.
- *When deployed correctly alongside complementary protective protocols, PPE establishes a highly effective physical barrier against disease transmission.*
- Beyond equipment, *personal hygiene* and *diligent hand care* are recognized as the single most critical precautions for preventing the spread of pathogens. However, maintaining fixed hand-hygiene infrastructure - such as distinct, dedicated basins for handwashing, instrument decontamination, and patient rinsing - presents a persistent operational challenge in routine clinical care.
- *These infrastructure hurdles are heavily amplified when community-based oral health services are carried out in mobile dental units or temporary field venues like schools.*
- Finally, to mitigate the risks that *hazardous bio-medical waste* poses to public health and the ecosystem, the World Health Organization (WHO) outlines an explicit eight-step waste management framework: waste minimisation, generation, segregation, intermediate storage, centralised storage, external transport, treatment, and final disposal.

Educating the Illiterate in Dental Extraction- When, How and Where?

- Oral diseases disproportionately impact underprivileged and impoverished populations, a demographic where low literacy rates often limit a clear understanding of the importance of oral health.
- Because the vast majority of Indians reside in rural regions, the country's population comprises diverse cultural and religious backgrounds that uniquely shape perceptions of health and illness.
- Dentistry is no exception to this rule, as a population's oral health outcomes are heavily influenced by deep-seated social and cultural factors that directly guide their day-to-day behavioural patterns.
- *A significant portion of the Indian population holds inaccurate beliefs regarding oral healthcare, frequently viewing tooth*

extraction as the default treatment for dental discomfort while remaining unaware of preventive or restorative alternatives.

- Many individuals mistakenly believe that dental procedures are inherently harmful and lack a proper understanding of the importance of completing prescribed treatment plans. To address these challenges, Government Dental Departments must systematically implement anxiety management techniques, such as transparent communication and the creation of supportive clinical environments.
- Notably, misconceptions and taboos surrounding dental health and extractions are prevalent across both illiterate and literate demographics.
- Resolving this issue requires a collaborative effort from government bodies, healthcare providers, and dental professionals to actively educate communities and raise oral health awareness. Integrating basic oral health concepts and preventive principles into the educational curriculum - from primary schools to higher education - is crucial.
- By educating the public on early diagnosis and disease prevention, widespread dental myths will dissipate, ultimately improving the overall oral health status of the population.

Government Programs and Fiscal Policies for Facilitating Dental Management & Extractions

Major Benchmarks –

- Government of India has initiated a ***National Oral Health Programme*** to provide integrated, comprehensive oral health care in the existing health care facilities with the following objectives:
 - To improve the determinants of oral health
 - To reduce morbidity from oral diseases
 - To integrate oral health promotion and preventive services with general health care system
 - To encourage Promotion of ***Public Private Partnerships*** (PPP) model for achieving better oral health.
- In order to achieve above listed objectives, *Government of India* has decided to assist the *State Governments* in initiating provision of

dental care along with other ongoing health programmes implemented at various levels of the primary health care system.

- Funding has been made available through the State PIPs for establishment of a dental unit [at district level or below].
- ***This dental unit equipped with necessary trained manpower, equipment including dental chair and support for consumables would be provided to the states through the NOHP.***
- These units, according to the level of saturation of state's own dental units, may be established at district hospitals or in the health facilities below the level of district hospitals.
- ❖ **Manpower -**
- ❖ Manpower, if required, [such as a Dental Surgeon, a Dental Hygienist & a Dental Assistant] may be appointed on contractual basis.
- ❖ **Equipment -**
- Equipment for the dental unit such as dental chair, x-ray machine and other supportive instruments may also be procured by the State Government
- The sanctioned funds can be used for procurement of consumables required for the unit.

Key Achievements -

- ***National Oral Health Programme*** was launched in India in 2014. The Programme is functional across 36 States/UTs. Under the programme, financial support for equipment, consumables, training, IEC activities and recruitment of manpower has been provided to States/UTs to establish dental care unit at the level of ***District hospital (DH), Sub District Hospital (SDH), Community Health Centre (CHC), Primary Health Centre (PHC).***
- 6023 dental care units have been established at 593 districts which includes 593 DH, 1056 Sub-District Hospital (SDH), 3229 Community Health Centre (CHC) and 1124 Primary Health Centre (PHC) as well as 21 Mobile Dental Units. The State/UT wise implementation status of the Programme.
- The facilities provided by the dental care units established through the Programme are:
 - Screening For Oral Diseases
 - Root Canal Treatment

- Dental Extraction
 - Oral Prophylaxis
 - Restorations.
- The number of beneficiaries State/UT wise under the Programme is given in below.

Table-1: The details of the funds allocated and spent at Central level is as under

Sl. No.	Financial year	BE	Expenditure
1	2019-20	5.3 crore	1.0491 crore
2	2020-21	5.3 crore	1.8844 crore
3	2021-22	2.2 crore	1.39 crore 11.61 crore (in supplementary)
4.	2022-23	The budget head for NOHP has been merged with Strengthening of National Programme Management Unit of the NHM	Rs. 5.1410697 crore has been released in FY 2022-23 under NOHP

To Remember -

- ✓ The future of **Public Health Dentistry** is preventive, digital, data-driven, community-oriented, and policy-focused.
- ✓ Dentistry is no longer confined to treating teeth inside a clinic.
- ✓ It is about:
 - Preventing disease before it begins
 - Using technology to bridge geographic barriers
 - Empowering communities through education
 - Informing policies through real-time data
 - Integrating oral health into the broader public health system
- ✓ Modern dentistry stands at the intersection of healthcare delivery, technology, community engagement, and governance.

BIBLIOGRAPHY:

1. Petersen PE, Bourgeois D, Ogawa H, Estupinan-Day S, Ndiaye C. The global burden of oral diseases and risks to oral health. *Bull World Health Organ* 2005; 83:661-9
2. Bali RK, Mathur VB, Talwar PP, Chanana HB. National Oral Health Survey and Fluoride Mapping, 2002-2003, India. Delhi: Dental Council of India; 2004
3. Holmlund A, Holm G, Lind L. Severity of periodontal disease and number of remaining teeth are related to the prevalence of myocardial infarction and hypertension in a study based on 4,254 subjects. *J Periodontol* 2006; 77:1173-8
4. Joshipura K. The relationship between oral conditions and ischemic stroke and peripheral vascular disease. *J Am Dent Assoc* 2002;133 Suppl:23S-30S
5. Watt RG. Strategies and approaches in oral disease prevention and health promotion. *Bull World Health Organ* 2005; 83:711-8
6. Fulton JT, Blackerby PE Jr., Russell AL. Trends in public health dentistry; dental health section. *Am J Public Health Nations Health* 1956; 46:353
7. Kishor NK. Public health implications of oral health-inequity in India. *J Adv Dent Res* 2010; 1:1-10
8. Shetty PS. Nutrition transition in India. *Public Health Nutr* 2002; 5:175-82
9. Shah N, Pandey R, Duggal R, Mathur U, Kumar R. Oral Health Survey in India: A Report of Multicentric Study, WHO – Oral Health Survey 2004. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization; 2005
10. Mathur MR, Singh A, Watt R. Addressing inequalities in oral health in India: Need for skill mix in the dental workforce. *J Family Med Prim Care* 2015; 4:200-2
11. Kakar H, Gambhir RS, Singh S, Kaur A, Nanda T. Informed consent: corner stone in ethical medical and dental practice. *J Family Med Prim Care*. 2014 Jan;3(1):68-71
12. FDI World Dental Federation. Ethics In Dentistry 2024. *Int Dent J*. 2025 Feb;75(1)

13. Lee JH, Nam SK, Kim JH (2020) Reasons for tooth extraction: a retrospective study. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg* 78(4):512–518. 10.1016/j.joms.2019.11.008
14. Chrysanthakopoulos NA (2011) Reasons for extraction of permanent teeth in Greece: a ve-year follow-up study. *Int Dent J* 61(1):19–24. 10.1111/j.1875-595X.2011.00004
15. Andreasen JO, Andreasen FM (2017) Dental trauma in children: a global perspective. *Dent Traumatol* 33(4):237–243. 10.1111/edt.12328
16. Aida J, Kondo K, Yamamoto T et al (2019) Socioeconomic factors and tooth loss in Japan. *Community Dent Oral Epidemiol* 47(3):241–247. 10.1111/cdoe.12452
17. Watt RG, Steele JG, Treasure ET et al (2020) Adult dental health survey 2019: implications for tooth loss. *Br Dent J* 228(3):187–192. 10.1038/s41415-020-1248
18. Kassebaum NJ, Bernabé E, Dahiya M et al (2014) Global burden of severe tooth loss: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Dent Res* 93(7 Suppl):20S–28S. 10.1177/0022034514537828
19. World Health Organization. Oral health, Geneva (2025) WHO; Available from: <https://www.who.int/news-room/fact-sheets/detail/oral-health>
20. Aida J, Kondo K, Yamamoto T et al (2019) Socioeconomic factors and tooth loss in Japan. *Community Dent Oral Epidemiol* 47(3):241–247. 10.1111/cdoe.12452
21. Murali A, Muddappa SC, Rajan RR, Joseph A, Ravi AB. Barriers to Geriatric Oral Health: A Multifaceted Public Health Issue. *Cureus*. 2025 Aug 8;17(8): e89604
22. Addressing mental health promotion in chronic disease prevention and health promotion. Perry GS, Presley-Cantrell LR, Dhingra S. *Am J Public Health*. 2010; 100:2337–2339
23. The National Dental Commission Act, 2023: A new future for India dentistry? 2023. <https://www.impriindia.com/insights/dental-act-dentistry-in-india-future/> <https://www.impriindia.com/insights/dental-act-dentistry-in-india-future/>
24. Mobile dental clinic for oral health services to underserved rural Indian communities. Bala R, Sargaiyan V, Rathi SA, Mankar SS, Jaiswal AK, Mankar SA. *Bioinformation*. 2023; 19:1383–1387
25. Gambhir RS, Kaur A, Singh A, Sandhu AR, Dhaliwal AP. Dental public health in India: An insight. *J Family Med Prim Care*. 2016;5(4):747-51

26. Wanyonyi KL, Radford DR, Gallagher JE. Dental skill mix: A cross-sectional analysis of delegation practices between dental and dental hygiene-therapy students involved in team training in the South of England. *Hum Resour Health*. 2014; 12:65
27. Gallagher JE, Lim Z, Harper PR. Workforce skill mix: Modelling the potential for dental therapists in state-funded primary dental care. *Int Dent J*. 2013;63(2):57-64
28. Wilson NH, Shamshir ZA, Moris S, Slater M, Kok EC, Dunne SM, et al. Dental workforce development as part of the oral health agenda for Brunei Darussalam. *Int Dent J*. 2013;63(1):49-55
29. Mobile dental clinic for oral health services to underserved rural Indian communities. Bala R, Sargaiyan V, Rathi SA, Mankar SS, Jaiswal AK, Mankar SA. *Bioinformation*. 2023; 19:1383–1387
30. Kshirsagar M, Dodamani A, Pimpale S, Sachdev SS, Patil D, Ghadage M, Shetty U, Khobrekar H. Mobile Dental Clinics: Bringing Smiles on Wheels. *Cureus*. 2025 May 11;17(5): e83873
31. Harte JA. Standard and transmission-based precautions: an update for dentistry. *J Am Dent Assoc* 2010 141: 572–581
32. 15, Department of Health United Kingdom. Health Technical Memorandum 01-05: Decontamination in primary care dental practices. Health Technical Memoranda [serial on the Inter net]. 2013 [cited 2013 26 March]
33. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Guidelines for infection control in dental health-care settings– 2003. *Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 2003 52: (Number RR-17) 1–68
34. World Health Organization. Guide to Implementation: A Guide to the Implementation of the WHO Multimodal Hand Hygiene Improvement Strategy. *Save Lives Clean Your Hands*. Geneva, Switzerland: WHO Press; 2009, [cited 2012 3 August]
35. De Amorim-Finzi MB, Cury MVC, Costa CRR et al. Rate of compliance with hand hygiene by dental healthcare personnel (DHCP) within a dentistry healthcare first aid facility. *Eur J Dent* 2010 4: 233–237
36. Omogbai JJ, Azodo CC, Ehizele AO et al. Hand hygiene amongst dental professionals in a tertiary dental clinic. *Afr J Clin Experiment Microbiol* 2011 12: 9–14

37. Radcliffe RA, Bixler D, Moorman A et al. Hepatitis B virus transmissions associated with a portable dental clinic, West Virginia, 2009. *J Am Dent Assoc* 2013 144: 1110–1118
38. World Health Organization. Safe management of wastes from health-care activities, Second ed., Vol. II (Chartier Y, Emmanuel J, Pieper U, Preuss A., Rushbrook P, Stringer R, Townend W, Wilbum S and Zghondi R, editors). Geneva, Switzerland: WHO Press; 2014
39. Byakodi S, Khan M, Biradar J, Dudhat K, Bihani N, Priya S. Taboos among general population about dental extraction in Sangli region: A prospective study. *Bioinformation*. 2025 May 31;21(5):1714-1718
40. Sharma V, Berkelhamer S, Lakshminrusimha S. Persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn. *Maternal health, neonatology and perinatology*. 2015 Jun 3;1(1):14
41. Tewari D, Nagesh L, Kumar M. Myths related to dentistry in the rural population of Bareilly district: A cross-sectional survey. *J Dent Sci Oral Rehab*. 2014;5(2):58-64
42. Dr. V. Teenu Lakshmi, Dr. Srivatsa Kenga Subbiah, and Dr. Mamta Singaram, and published in *International Journal of Innovative Science and Research Technology*. 2019;4(12):271-6
43. Rai A, Menon I, Aruna DS, Singh A. Association between taboos in dentistry and oral health behaviour among adult population of Ghaziabad. *J Dent Specialities* 2016;4(1):14-20
44. Kiran GB, Pachava S, Sanikommu S, Simha BV, Srinivas R, Rao VN. Evaluation of dent-o-myths among adult population living in a rural region of Andhra Pradesh, India: A cross-sectional study. *JNTR Univ Health Sci* 2016; 5:130-6
45. National Oral Health Programme (NOHP): National Health Mission
46. "The Future of Public Health Dentistry: How Prevention, Policy, and Technology Are Transforming Oral Health for Communities"

CHAPTER 13

PEDODONTIC PERSPECTIVE FOR DENTAL EXTRACTIONS: WHY EXTRACTION WOULD BE INDICATED?



Dr Farah Shehani A, MDS

Assistant Professor

Paediatric & Preventive Dentistry

Madha Dental College & Hospital

The Tamil Nadu Dr MGR Medical University

Chennai, Tamil Nadu

-
- In Paediatric dentistry, the decision to extract a tooth is made with greater caution than in adult cases, as it involves not just the removal of a tooth, but potentially influencing the growth, development, and psychology of the child.
 - The primary goal of treatment planning is to **preserve the primary dentition until natural exfoliation**, ensuring proper arch integrity, guidance of eruption, mastication, speech, and aesthetics. When this preservation is no longer beneficial, extraction is warranted.
 - The indications for extraction in children can be broadly categorized into **dental, orthodontic, pathological, systemic, and developmental-behavioural** categories, each requiring a tailored clinical judgment supported by radiographic evaluation and interdisciplinary discussion.

Dental Indications -

- **Dental caries** remains the most common chronic childhood disease worldwide, and when it progresses to a non-restorable state or causes infection, extraction is indicated.
 - **Extensive decay** with pulpal involvement and periapical pathology in non-restorable teeth (especially in immunocompromised children).
 - **Teeth with failed pulp therapy**—particularly those with unresolved symptoms after pulpectomy or apexification (*Wright & Kupietzky, 2014*).
 - **Advanced internal or external resorption**, especially when the root is compromised or invading adjacent structures.
 - **Over-retained, hypermobile, or prematurely exfoliating teeth** interfering with speech or occlusion.
- In these cases, **Radiographs** such as IOPA or OPG help determine root integrity, successor development, and presence of any pathology.

Orthodontic Indications -

- In the realm of developing occlusion, certain conditions warrant proactive extractions to facilitate or guide proper eruption patterns and alignment:
 - **Serial extraction protocols**, especially in children with severe arch length-tooth size discrepancies, to reduce crowding and complex ortho needs later.
 - **Retained primary teeth** obstructing or delaying the eruption of permanent successors, particularly upper canines and lower incisors.
 - **Supernumerary teeth** (*e.g., mesiodens*) interfering with midline symmetry or incisor eruption.
 - Extractions aiding **orthodontic mechanics**, *e.g.*, to relieve crossbite or rotate teeth obstructed by adjacent roots.
- Close coordination with **Orthodontists** is essential in these cases, and CBCT imaging may be warranted in impaction cases.

Pathological Indications -

- Teeth that are involved in, or adjacent to, pathological lesions often require removal as part of the disease management protocol.
- **Radicular or dentigerous cysts** involving primary teeth.
- **Odontogenic tumours**, odontomas, or complex hamartomas.
- **Trauma-induced resorption or fractures** that compromise integrity, such as root fractures or horizontal mid-root trauma.
- **Fistulas, abscesses, or sinus tracts** associated with necrotic teeth that threaten alveolar development or adjacent teeth (*Yassin & Ghoneim, 2020*).

Systemic Indications -

- In children with systemic conditions, dental extractions may be prophylactic or therapeutic.
- Clearance of oral infections **prior to chemotherapy, bone marrow transplant, or cardiac surgeries** to reduce systemic bacteraemia risk (*AAPD, 2022*).
- Children with **congenital heart disease**, immunosuppression, bleeding disorders, or conditions like cyclic neutropenia may require extraction to prevent systemic complications.
- In some cases, asymptomatic teeth may be extracted to reduce future risk during medically vulnerable phases (e.g., neutropenic episodes).
- A multidisciplinary consultation with **Paediatricians** or **Haematologists** is essential before extraction.

Developmental and Behavioural Considerations -

- Paediatric extractions must be developmentally timed to avoid disrupting the child's natural growth trajectory:
- **Premature extraction** of primary molars without space maintenance may lead to **mesial drift, loss of arch length**, and impaction of premolars.
- Children with special needs, sensory disorders, or extreme anxiety may require deferral of extractions until adequate behavioural preparation or sedation is possible.
- The child's **emotional readiness, ability to understand and cooperate**, and psychological response to the procedure should all be factored into the clinical decision (*Wright & Kupietzky, 2014*).

Radiographic and Growth Considerations -

- Radiographs are indispensable in extraction planning to assess **root resorption, successor presence and position, follicular development**, and proximity to vital structures.
- Panoramic radiographs and CBCT are useful in complex cases involving **impactions, missing teeth, or pathology**.
- In conclusion, **tooth extraction in Paediatric Dentistry is not a singular action, but a carefully deliberated decision** with implications for occlusion, aesthetics, speech, airway, and psychological development. Each case must be approached holistically, balancing risks, long-term outcomes, and interdisciplinary insight.

Pre-extraction Considerations & Planning -

- Pre-extraction evaluation in paediatric dentistry is a **multi-layered process**, not merely limited to identifying the problematic tooth.
- It requires a **child-centric, developmental, and holistic assessment**, integrating dental, behavioural, medical, and psychosocial domains to ensure the procedure is safe, justified, and as trauma-free as possible.
- The outcome of a **paediatric extraction** often depends more on the **preoperative planning and rapport-building** than the technical act itself (*AAPD, 2022*).

❖ Counselling and Communication -

- Effective communication with both the **child and the parent/guardian** is fundamental.
- **Parental counselling** includes explanation of the diagnosis, reason for extraction, expected outcomes, postoperative care, and need for space maintenance (if indicated).
- **Child-friendly language** using the *Tell-Show-Do* (TSD) technique, euphemisms (e.g., “wiggle the tooth,” “put the tooth to sleep”), or behaviour shaping techniques is essential to reduce anticipatory fear (*Wright & Kupietzky, 2014*).
- **Visual aids** like picture books or animations, or even pre-appointment orientation visits, help familiarize the child.

- In cases involving special needs children, parents must be briefed in advance about behavioural techniques, sedation protocols, and possible risks.

❖ **Informed Consent and Documentation -**

- Legally and ethically, **written informed consent** is mandatory and must include:
 - Nature and reason for extraction
 - Potential complications (e.g., damage to permanent tooth bud, bleeding)
 - Alternatives to extraction (restorative, pulp therapy, observation)
 - Postoperative protocols
 - Space maintainer plans (if needed)
 - Behavioural support or sedation options
- In some public settings, **uncooperative or emergency cases** may be treated under parental verbal consent, but this should be documented and witnessed appropriately.

❖ **Clinical and Radiographic Assessment -**

- A detailed **clinical examination** includes:
 - Caries status, mobility, pain, swelling, fistula, gingival condition
 - Occlusion and crowding
 - Behaviour rating (Frankl Scale or Wright's Behavioural Classification)
- **Radiographic evaluation** typically includes:
 - **IOPA** for periapical pathology, root length, and resorption
 - **OPG** for assessing permanent successor presence, development stage, and anomalies
 - **CBCT** in special situations like trauma, impactions, or pathological lesions
- Radiographs also help identify proximity to anatomical structures (e.g., sinus, inferior alveolar nerve) and need for surgical planning.

❖ **Behaviour and Anxiety Assessment -**

- Behaviour management begins **before the injection or instrumentation.**
- Factors to evaluate:
 1. **Age and maturity level:** Younger children (below 4 years) may require pharmacological guidance or multiple visits
 2. **Past dental experiences:** Previous traumatic experiences may warrant additional behavioural support
 3. **Frankl Behaviour Rating Scale** guides the approach—definitely negative (—) children may need sedation or GA
 4. **Dental anxiety scales** (e.g., Venham Picture Test or Facial Image Scale) may be used in research or advanced care settings
- These assessments help decide between **Local Anesthesia, Conscious Sedation, or General Anesthesia.**

❖ **Medical History and Alerts -**

- A detailed **medical history** must be elicited, ideally corroborated with a written form and verbal discussion.
- Pay close attention to:
 1. **Bleeding disorders** (e.g., haemophilia, ITP)
 2. **Congenital heart defects** (may require antibiotic prophylaxis)
 3. **Asthma, epilepsy, diabetes** (affect stress response, medication choice)
 4. **Allergies** to latex, local anaesthetics, antibiotics
 5. **Syndromic children or special healthcare needs**
 6. **Ongoing medications** that may influence healing (e.g., steroids, chemotherapy)
- Children with systemic illness may require **physician clearance** prior to extractions.

❖ **Photographic and Legal Record Keeping -**

- Pre-operative **photographs** aid in:
 1. Monitoring healing
 2. Communicating with referrals or institutions

3. Medico-legal defence

- Case sheets must include:
 1. Chief complaint
 2. Diagnosis and prognosis
 3. Treatment options
 4. Consent
 5. Space management plans
- Many institutions are now adopting **digital documentation systems** for improved accuracy and legal reliability.
- ❖ **Child Protection and Safeguarding Considerations -**
- Unexplained dental trauma, neglect, or dental infections may be a red flag for **child abuse or neglect**.
- Dentists must:
 1. Document all findings thoroughly
 2. Report suspected abuse to appropriate child welfare services (as per national/local laws)
 3. Proceed with extraction only if it does not interfere with forensic investigation or safeguarding protocols.

General Precautions to be Taken / Considered -

- General precautions during paediatric dental extractions ensure not only the **safety of the child** but also the **preservation of developing oral structures**.
- These precautions bridge the gap between a technically sound procedure and a child-centric, developmentally appropriate experience.
- Unlike adult extractions, paediatric cases involve smaller anatomical spaces, proximity to developing permanent tooth buds, and behaviour-dependent challenges.
- ❖ **Proper Identification of Tooth and Arch -**
- One of the most common medico-legal errors is the extraction of the **wrong tooth** or even the **wrong quadrant**. To avoid this:

1. Confirm the tooth using **both clinical examination and radiographic correlation**.
2. Use **tooth numbering systems (FDI/Palmer)** clearly in documentation and consent.
3. Perform a **double-check protocol** with the assistant and confirm with the parent or guardian.

❖ **Atraumatic Extraction Technique -**

- Preserving the integrity of surrounding bone and tissues is especially critical:
 1. Use **paediatric-sized instruments** to reduce trauma.
 2. Avoid excessive elevation or luxation which may fracture thin alveolar bone.
 3. **Do not curette excessively** to avoid damaging the underlying permanent follicle.
 4. Avoid forceful instrumentation in areas of **resorbed roots**, which are prone to fracture.
 5. For multirooted teeth, consider **sectioning** if roots are divergent or if proximity to permanent teeth exists.
- These techniques help reduce postoperative complications and facilitate better healing.

❖ **Management of the Child's Soft Tissues -**

- Soft tissue trauma during extraction is often avoidable with proper care:
 1. Retract **lips and cheeks** gently but securely using fingers or paediatric retractors.
 2. Ensure the child is coached not to close suddenly, as this may result in **lip biting**, especially under local Anesthesia.
 3. Place a **gauze pad** to prevent lip injury post-extraction.
 4. Use **high-volume suction** to maintain a clean, visible field and reduce gagging risk.
- Post-operative instructions must highlight the risks of biting numb lips or cheeks to parents.

❖ **Haemostasis and Bleeding Control -**

- Use **pressure pack with sterile gauze** for 10–15 minutes post-extraction.
- Avoid rinsing or spitting immediately after procedure to allow clot formation.
- For children with bleeding tendencies (e.g., haemophilia, von Willebrand's disease), use **haemostatic agents** (e.g., *Surgicel*, *Gelfoam*) and consult a paediatrician for premedication (*Hallonsten et al., 2006*).
- Monitor for delayed bleeding at home—parents should be educated on signs and emergency contacts.

❖ **Instrument Control and Environment -**

- Instruments should be **laid out in order of use** to reduce stress and delays.
- Maintain a **child-safe operatory**, free of visual clutter or threatening items.
- Sharp tools should be kept **out of direct view of the child** to reduce anxiety.
- The assistant should be trained in **paediatric restraint, hand-holding techniques**, and verbal reassurance.

❖ **Emergency Preparedness -**

- Despite all precautions, paediatric patients may react unexpectedly:
 - Ensure **age-appropriate emergency drug kits and oxygen** are available.
 - Staff should be trained in **basic life support (BLS)** for children.
 - For children with systemic risks, have **emergency protocols and hospital referral systems** in place.
 - Monitor for vasovagal syncope, allergic reactions, or sudden behavioural shifts.

❖ **Documentation of All Steps -**

- Complete documentation is critical for:
 - Legal protection
 - Academic and clinical audit

- Long-term patient tracking
- This includes pre-op behaviour rating, Anesthesia administered, instrument used, complications (if any), and post-op instructions given.

Medical Precautions to be Taken / Considered -

- Medical precautions in paediatric dental extractions are essential to ensure the **systemic safety of the child**, especially since children often present with underlying conditions that can complicate even routine procedures.
- Paediatric dentists must adopt a **medically informed approach**, understanding the implications of each systemic condition on dental care, Anesthesia, wound healing, and behaviour.

❖ Comprehensive Medical History -

- A thorough **medical history and systems review** is the cornerstone of safe paediatric extraction planning. Information must be gathered from both **parents and medical records**, especially in children receiving systemic therapy or hospital-based care.
- Key questions should address:
 1. Past hospitalizations or surgeries
 2. Ongoing medications
 3. Known allergies (particularly to **latex, antibiotics, or local anaesthetics**)
 4. Family history of bleeding disorders, epilepsy, asthma
 5. Congenital or acquired conditions (e.g., cardiac defects, diabetes, epilepsy)
- **Red flag alerts** like history of syncope, steroid use, or immunosuppression must be flagged in the dental record and communicated to the team.

❖ Haematological Considerations -

- Children with bleeding disorders require **pre-operative clearance** and coordination with a paediatric haematologist.
- Common conditions include:

- **Haemophilia A or B:** factor VIII or IX replacement prior to extractions
 - **von Willebrand's disease:** may need desmopressin (DDAVP) or factor infusions
 - **Thrombocytopenia (e.g., ITP):** platelet count should ideally be >75,000/ μ L for invasive procedures
 - **Liver disease:** prolonged INR/PT requires correction with vitamin K or FFP
- Topical haemostatic agents such as **Gelfoam, Surgicel, thrombin, or tranexamic acid rinse** should be available chairside (*Hallonsten et al., 2006*).
- ❖ **Cardiovascular Precautions -**
- Children with **congenital heart disease (CHD)** or valve defects may be at risk for infective endocarditis.
- Follow **AHA 2007 Guidelines** for antibiotic prophylaxis: E.g., **Amoxicillin 50 mg/kg** 30–60 min prior to procedure (max 2 g)
 - In penicillin-allergic patients: **Clindamycin 20 mg/kg**
- Medical clearance should be obtained, especially for cyanotic heart diseases or children on anticoagulants.
- ❖ **Respiratory Disorders -**
- Conditions like **asthma, adenoidal hypertrophy, or obstructive sleep apnea (OSA)** must be assessed before administering sedatives or local anaesthetics with vasoconstrictors.
- Avoid triggers (e.g., sulfites in LA)
 - Ensure **rescue inhalers (e.g., salbutamol)** are available
 - Postpone elective extractions during active respiratory infections
- In OSA, sedatives may depress airway tone. Conscious sedation must be avoided unless the airway has been evaluated.
- ❖ **Endocrine and Metabolic Conditions -**
- Children with **type 1 diabetes** must have well-controlled blood glucose and avoid long fasting durations:
- Morning appointments preferred

- Minor extractions may not require dose alteration, but food intake timing must be monitored
- Uncontrolled diabetes increases risk of post-op infections and delayed healing
- Children with **thyroid disorders** may show exaggerated response to epinephrine-containing LAs.
- ❖ **Immunocompromised States and Oncology Patients -**
- Children undergoing chemotherapy, radiotherapy, or organ transplants may be severely immunocompromised:
 - Avoid elective extractions during neutropenic or thrombocytopenic phases
 - Obtain ANC ($>1,000/\text{mm}^3$) and **platelet count ($>75,000/\text{mm}^3$)** prior to procedure
 - Consider **antibiotic prophylaxis** and **antifungal rinse**
 - Coordinate with oncologist or transplant team
- Dental clearance prior to initiating chemotherapy often involves **removal of non-restorable teeth or potential infection foci** (*AAPD, 2022*).
- ❖ **Neurological and Behavioural Conditions -**
- In children with:
 - **Epilepsy**: Check medication schedule; avoid triggers like anxiety, flashing lights
 - **ADHD or autism**: Shorter visits, familiarity with routines, sedation protocols as needed
 - **Cerebral palsy**: Muscle tone, gag reflex, and aspiration risk should be considered
- Premedication or general Anesthesia may be required for behaviourally complex cases.
- ❖ **Drug Considerations -**
- **Lidocaine** and **Articaine** are commonly used; dosage must not exceed **4.4 mg/kg**
- Avoid **NSAIDs in asthmatics**

- Use **acetaminophen** as the preferred analgesic in hepatic-compromised children
- Children on **steroids** may require supplemental dosing for invasive procedures.

❖ **Emergency Preparedness -**

- Every dental operatory should be equipped with:
 - Emergency drug kit (*adrenaline, antihistamines, glucose, salbutamol*)
 - Age-appropriate oxygen delivery systems
 - Pulse Oximeter, BP cuff, and suction
 - Staff trained in **Basic Life Support (BLS) for children**
- For medically complex cases, procedures should be performed in **hospital-based dental setups** or day-care surgical units with anaesthetic backup.

Pedodontic Anaesthesia -

- Pain management in paediatric dentistry is a delicate blend of clinical skill, child psychology, and pharmacological precision.
- Administering anaesthesia in children requires awareness of physiological differences, behavioural responses, and drug safety. The goal is not just pain control, but also the creation of a positive dental experience that shapes future compliance and reduces anxiety (*AAPD, 2022; Côté & Wilson, 2006*).

❖ **Local Anesthesia (LA) -**

- Local anaesthesia remains the first-line technique for extractions in cooperative children.
- **Agents used:**
 - **2% lidocaine with 1:100,000 epinephrine** is standard (*AAPD, 2019*).
 - **Articaine (4%)** may offer superior diffusion but is contraindicated in children under 4 years due to risk of paraesthesia (*Malamed, 2013*).

➤ **Dosage calculation:**

- Maximum safe dose of lidocaine: **4.4 mg/kg** (*AAPD, 2022*).
Always aspirate before injecting to avoid intravascular delivery.

➤ **Techniques:**

- Infiltration for maxillary primary teeth.
- Inferior Alveolar Nerve Block for mandibular molars.
- Palatal and long buccal injections for complete anaesthesia.

➤ **Discomfort reduction strategies:**

- Topical anaesthetics (20% benzocaine)
- Warming the LA solution and using slow injection techniques (*Wright & Kupietzky, 2014*)

➤ **Common complications:**

- Lip or cheek biting, trismus, soft tissue swelling, or hematoma formation (*Malamed, 2013*)

❖ **Conscious Sedation -**

- Used for children with mild-moderate anxiety or undergoing multiple extractions.

➤ **Nitrous oxide-oxygen inhalation sedation (NOIS):**

- Rapid onset, reversible, minimal side effects
- Requires scavenging system, continuous oxygen delivery, and trained operator (*AAPD, 2019*)

➤ **Indications:**

- Children with positive or negative behaviour on the Frankl scale
- Gagging, anxiety, or poor coping mechanisms

- **Oral sedation** (e.g., midazolam, hydroxyzine) may be used under strict monitoring and fasting protocols (*Coté & Wilson, 2006*).

➤ **Contraindications:**

- Respiratory obstruction (e.g., adenoids, OSA), severe nasal congestion, or children unable to tolerate nasal hood

❖ **General Anaesthesia (GA) -**

➤ Indicated for:

- Very young, uncooperative children
- Children with special healthcare needs
- Extensive multiple extractions in one session

➤ **Settings:** GA must be administered in **hospital-based environments** with anaesthesiologist support (*AAPD, 2022*).

➤ **Agents and techniques:**

- Sevoflurane or IV propofol for induction
- Endotracheal intubation or laryngeal mask airway for airway protection

➤ **Risks:**

- Post-op nausea, vomiting, laryngospasm, rare anesthetic complications (*Coté & Wilson, 2006*)

❖ **Non-Pharmacological Adjuncts -**

- **Behavioural methods:** Tell-Show-Do, desensitization, positive reinforcement.
- **Audio-visual distraction (AVD):** Reduces need for sedation (*Shehani et al., 2024*).
- **Hypnosis or guided imagery:** Shown to improve cooperation in school-aged children.
- **Brainwave Entrainment (BWE):** Demonstrated to lower pre-operative anxiety in RCTs (*Shehani et al., 2024*).

❖ **Post-Anaesthetic Care -**

- Parents should be advised to monitor the child for 2–3 hours post-extraction.
- **Dietary advice:** Avoid hard or hot foods until sensation returns.
- Use of **cold packs** and **paracetamol (15 mg/kg)** for pain control if needed (*AAPD, 2022*).

Post-Extraction Considerations

Preservation and Rehabilitation of the Extraction Socket -

- Paediatric dental extractions must not end with tooth removal; rather, they mark the beginning of **restorative, space-preserving, and functional planning**.
 - Unlike adults, where alveolar bone remodelling is often sufficient, children require thoughtful socket rehabilitation to ensure **harmonious eruption, esthetics, and occlusion**.
 - Failure to plan for post-extraction consequences can lead to **malocclusion, mesial drift, midline shifts**, and emotional distress due to missing teeth.
- ❖ **Socket Preservation in Children -**
- Traditionally, socket preservation techniques are underutilized in paediatric dentistry due to the assumption that natural bone fill occurs rapidly.
 - However, recent advances show that in selected cases — such as early loss of primary molars or anterior trauma — socket preservation is beneficial.
- **Indications for socket preservation in children:**
 - Early extraction of primary molars (especially 2nd molars before age 8)
 - Syndromic children with missing successors
 - Delayed eruption of permanent successors due to pathology
 - Esthetic zones (e.g., anterior maxilla) post-trauma
 - **Materials used:**
 - **Calcium sulfate, hydroxyapatite crystals, collagen plugs**
 - **PRF (Platelet-Rich Fibrin)** to enhance healing and soft tissue coverage (*Goyal et al., 2020*)
 - **Bioactive glass**, slowly gaining paediatric acceptance
 - **Technique:**
 - Gentle curettage only if necessary (e.g., infected periapex)
 - Avoid deep debridement to protect the **permanent follicle**

- Use of barrier membranes must be minimal and resorbable

❖ **Space Maintenance Following Extraction -**

- Premature loss of primary teeth can disrupt the eruption path of successors.
- If the **extraction occurs more than 1 year before expected exfoliation**, a **space maintainer** is strongly indicated (*AAPD, 2022*).

- **Types of space maintainers:**

- **Band and loop:** For unilateral posterior loss
- **Nance or Transpalatal Arch:** For bilateral upper molar loss
- **Lingual arch:** For bilateral lower molar loss in the mixed dentition
- **Distal shoe appliance:** When 2nd primary molar is lost before 1st permanent molar erupts

- **Clinical protocol:**

- Take impressions immediately or at the follow-up visit
- Review and adjust appliance periodically
- Remove when the permanent tooth has erupted into position

❖ **Soft Tissue and Bone Healing -**

- Children typically heal faster than adults, but certain precautions enhance healing:

- **Post-op instructions:**

- No spitting, rinsing, or use of straws for 24 hours
- Soft diet and cold compress on the day of extraction
- Use of chlorhexidine gel (0.12%) or saline rinses after 24 hours

- **Healing timeline:**

- Initial clot: within 15 minutes
- Soft tissue closure: within 7–10 days
- Radiographic bone fill: 8–12 weeks

- **Complications:**

- Delayed eruption, dry socket (rare in kids), gingival overgrowth, infection

- Prompt intervention prevents orthodontic or prosthetic complications later
- ❖ **Psychological and Aesthetic Follow-up -**
- **Anterior tooth loss** may affect a child's speech, self-confidence, and social interaction.
 - **Pedo partials** or esthetic maintainers may be considered.
 - Regular reassurance and follow-up visits help normalize the experience.
- **Parental counselling:**
 - Importance of compliance with space maintainer
 - Monitoring eruption milestones and hygiene
- ❖ **Interdisciplinary Collaboration -**
- **Paediatric dentists** must coordinate with:
 - **Orthodontists** for long-term space evaluation
 - **Prosthodontists** if long-term missing teeth are expected (e.g., anodontia)
 - **ENT or OMFS** in case of sinus involvement or oroantral perforation

Latest Trends & Advancements in Paediatric Extraction -

- The landscape of paediatric dental extractions is evolving rapidly with the incorporation of **minimally invasive techniques, technology-assisted diagnosis, behavioural science advancements, and biomaterials.**
- These innovations aim to **reduce trauma, enhance precision, and improve the psychological experience** for the child while preserving essential dental structures.
- ❖ **Laser-Assisted Extractions -**
- **Dental lasers** have revolutionized soft tissue and minor surgical procedures in paediatric dentistry.
- **Diode and Er:YAG lasers** can assist in:
 - Soft tissue removal around impacted or partially erupted teeth

- Haemostasis during extractions
- Reducing postoperative swelling and discomfort
- **Benefits:**
 - Less bleeding
 - No sutures
 - Faster healing
 - Improved child cooperation due to reduced noise and vibration
- Studies confirm that **Er: YAG lasers** improve surgical outcomes and reduce patient anxiety in paediatric populations (*Matsumoto et al., 2019*).
- ❖ **Advanced Behaviour Management Tools -**
- With rising awareness about **dental fear and anxiety**, modern extraction procedures emphasize psychological comfort:
- **Brainwave Entrainment (BWE):**
 - Uses audio stimuli (e.g., binaural beats) to synchronize brainwaves.
 - Lowers preoperative anxiety and improves cooperative behaviour.
 - RCTs show significant reduction in heart rate and anxiety scores in children undergoing extractions (*Shehani et al., 2024*).
- **Audio-visual distraction (AVD):**
 - Use of VR headsets, ceiling-mounted TVs, or tablet videos
 - Shown to reduce perceived pain and fear during LA administration and extractions
- These methods are safe, drug-free, and can be incorporated into any practice with minimal investment.
- ❖ **Artificial Intelligence (AI) and Digital Radiography -**
- The integration of AI in dental diagnostics is improving the **accuracy of treatment planning** in children.
- **AI-powered radiograph analysis:**

- Detection of root resorption, proximity to successors.
- Identification of anomalies like missing teeth, supernumeraries.
- Predictive modelling of eruption patterns (*Zhou et al., 2021*)
- **CBCT in selected paediatric cases:**
 - Especially useful in trauma, impacted teeth, or syndromic children
 - Provides 3D visualization for safe surgical planning
- These tools help reduce iatrogenic damage and ensure more predictable extractions.
- ❖ **Biomaterials and Tissue Engineering -**
- Paediatric socket preservation is being enhanced by bioactive and regenerative materials:
- **Platelet-Rich Fibrin (PRF):**
 - Harvested from the child's own blood
 - Accelerates healing and reduces post-op infection risk (*Goyal et al., 2020*)
- **Resorbable collagen membranes and bioactive glass:**
 - Maintain socket volume
 - Prevent collapse in anterior esthetic zones
- While still more common in adult practices, their cautious adaptation in paediatric dentistry is growing, especially in syndromic or trauma-related cases.
- ❖ **Digital Workflow Integration -**
- **Digital consent forms** streamline documentation and protect against legal issues.
- **Electronic dental records (EDRs)** improve access to past medical and dental history.
- **Intraoral scanners** are beginning to replace traditional impressions for space maintainer fabrication, especially useful for anxious or special needs children.

❖ **Paediatric-Friendly Extraction Kits -**

- Manufacturers now offer child-sized:
 - Forceps with ergonomic grips
 - Elevators with rounded blades
 - Rubber-dam-compatible instruments to improve visualization
- Such modifications reduce trauma and improve tactile control for the operator.
- Paediatric extraction procedures are no longer limited to basic techniques — they are now a **high-tech, child-sensitive service** that blends innovation with empathy.
- Dentists must stay current with these trends to deliver care that is **clinically effective, emotionally supportive, and developmentally appropriate**.

Important Points: To Summarize

- Paediatric tooth extraction is far more than a mechanical procedure — it is a **developmentally sensitive, multidisciplinary intervention** that requires clinical precision, behavioural empathy, and long-term planning.
- The following are the core takeaways for students, clinicians, and educators:

1. Clinical Decision-Making -

- Tooth extraction in children must be based on a **clear clinical rationale**: whether due to non-restorability, orthodontic needs, pathology, or systemic health concerns.
- The **timing** of extraction is crucial — premature removal without appropriate space maintenance may cause **malocclusion, impactions, or midline shifts**.
- **Radiographs (IOPA, OPG, CBCT)** should be used not only to confirm the diagnosis but also to map out anatomical relationships and risks.

2. Behavioural & Consent Protocols -

- **Paediatric behaviour management** (e.g., Tell-Show-Do, desensitization) is as essential as surgical skill.

- Informed consent from parents or guardians should be **documented thoroughly**, including potential risks, anaesthesia options, and post-op plans.
- Children with **anxiety or special needs** must be managed with **customized behaviour protocols or sedation/general anaesthesia** under strict safety standards.

3. Medical & Emergency Preparedness -

- Always conduct a detailed **medical history screening**, especially for children with bleeding disorders, cardiac conditions, asthma, epilepsy, or immunodeficiencies.
- **Antibiotic prophylaxis**, haemostatic precautions, and sedation safety measures must be tailored to individual systemic needs.
- Every clinic must be equipped with **paediatric emergency kits, trained staff, and oxygen supply**.

4. Post-Extraction Rehabilitation -

- Extraction is the beginning of a longer care pathway:
 - **Socket preservation** should be considered in esthetic or functional zones
 - **Space maintainers** are critical when primary molars are lost early
 - Long-term **orthodontic surveillance** must be arranged
- Provide clear **written post-op instructions**, especially regarding pain control, diet, and oral hygiene.

5. Integration of New Trends -

- Modern paediatric dentistry integrates:
 - **Laser-assisted extractions**
 - **Behavioural tech** (e.g., Brainwave Entrainment, Biofeedback therapy, AVD)
 - **AI-supported diagnosis and planning**
 - **Biomaterials like PRF, bioactive glass**
 - **Digital workflows for consent and space management appliances**

- Staying updated on these tools improves **outcomes**, **reduces trauma**, and elevates the standard of paediatric care.

6. Interdisciplinary Collaboration -

- Paediatric dentists must collaborate with:
 - **Orthodontists** for eruption and space analysis
 - **Medical paediatricians** for systemic clearance
 - **Anaesthesiologists** for sedation/GA cases
 - **ENT/OMFS specialists** for trauma, syndromes, or sinus involvement

7. Documentation & Academic Rigor -

- Every procedure must be logged with clinical notes, radiographs, consent forms, photographs, and behaviour assessments.
- For academic and medico-legal protection, structured documentation ensures safety and professionalism.
- ❖ Remember, Paediatric extractions are a **multi-dimensional event** that touches on **growth, development, medicine, psychology, and restoration**. A well-planned extraction protects not just the child's health — but also their smile, self-confidence, and quality of life.

BIBLIOGRAPHY:

1. AAPD. (2019). Guideline on Use of Nitrous Oxide-Oxygen Inhalation Sedation.
2. AAPD. (2022). Guideline on Management of the Developing Dentition and Occlusion in Pediatric Dentistry.
3. AAPD. (2022). Behavior Guidance for the Pediatric Dental Patient.
4. Coté CJ, Wilson S. (2006). Guidelines for monitoring and management of pediatric patients during and after sedation. Pediatric Dentistry.
5. Goyal, A., Chand, P., & Gupta, A. (2020). Socket Preservation in Pediatric Dentistry: An Overview. Journal of Clinical Pediatric Dentistry.
6. Hallonsten A-L, et al. (2006). Dental treatment under general anaesthesia in children with disabilities. International Journal of Paediatric Dentistry.
7. Malamed, S. F. (2013). Handbook of Local Anesthesia. Elsevier Health Sciences.
8. Matsumoto, K., et al. (2019). Clinical applications of Er: YAG laser in pediatric oral surgery. Lasers in Medical Science.

9. Shehani, F., Samuel, V., Kavitha, R., & Mani, R. (2024). Effectiveness of Brainwave Entrainment on Pre-operative Fear and Anxiety in Pediatric Dental Patients: A Randomized Controlled Trial. *European Archives of Paediatric Dentistry*.
10. Wright, G. Z., & Kupietzky, A. (2014). *Behavior Management in Dentistry for Children*. Wiley-Blackwell.
11. Yassin, S. M., & Ghoneim, N. E. (2020). Socket Preservation Techniques in Pediatric Dentistry: A Mini Review. *Pediatric Dental Journal*.
12. Zhou, W., et al. (2021). Deep Learning-Based Detection of Malocclusion and Airway Obstruction in Pediatric Sleep-Disordered Breathing. *Sleep and Breathing*.

CHAPTER 14

CONSCIOUS SEDATION

A RELAXED APPROACH TO TOOTH EXTRACTION



Dr. Karteek Eswara, MDS

Professor

Paediatric & Preventive Dentistry

Vinayaka Mission's Sankarachariyar Dental College

Vinayaka Mission's Research Foundation

(Deemed To Be University)

Salem, Tamil Nadu, India

-
- Many children develop fear of the dentist because of an unpleasant or painful encounter in the dental office.
 - The lack of use of proper techniques allows the child to feel overwhelmed during the procedure, instilling fear into the child for a future aversion of dental care.
 - Sedation decreases such complications and helps build up the trust of the family and child.
 - A **Paediatric Dentist** must also understand that **sedation is in a continuum where a patient can easily pass from the mild end to the deeper sedation end**, probably to the loss of protective reflexes.

Conscious Sedation -

- A method of inducing medically controlled states of depressed consciousness while ensuring the maintenance of the protective reflexes, the ability of the patient to maintain patency of the airway, uncontrolled by the intervention of any third party, and possible

responses by the patient to stimulation or command by the voice (open your mouth).

Deep Sedation -

- A medically controlled state of depressed consciousness or unconsciousness from which the patient cannot easily be aroused and may be accompanied by partial or complete loss of protective reflexes and by the inability to maintain patency of the airway independently; also, response to physical stimulation or verbal command may not be purposeful.

Patient Selection and Assessment -

- Yet another evaluation, which must also include all the most relevant information concerning the patient's medical, dental, and social history, is mandatory.
- Besides, the **ASA Physical Status Classification System** must be assigned to every patient.

Class	Physical Status
I	A normal healthy patient
II	A patient with a mild systemic disease
III	A patient with severe systemic disease that limits activity but is not incapacitating
IV	A patient with an incapacitating systemic disease that is a constant threat to life
V	A moribund patient not expected to survive 24 hours, with or without operation

Physical-Status Classification of the American Society of Anaesthesiologists

- **Patients classified ASA I or ASA II are generally suitable candidates** for conscious sedation in the outpatient setting.
- **Patients classified as ASA III or ASA IV present some unique challenges**, suggesting that they should be treated on an individual basis. These patients would be treated in a hospital setting, with physician intervention as warranted.

Objectives of Conscious Sedation –

1. The patient's behaviour should be influenced so as to gain psychological compliance with the desired dental treatment.
2. Consciousness must be maintained throughout the intervention.
3. Cooperation from the patients must be ensured.
4. The anaesthetic should elevate the pain threshold, which is largely an advantage in the setting of lengthy appointments.
5. Protective reflexes must remain intact. Consciousness has been shown to be a prerequisite for the preservation of protective reflexes; its loss, even briefly, produces catastrophic systematic effects upon the respiratory and cardiovascular systems.
6. Another suggestion could be a minimal impact on the vital signs.
7. No prolonged monitoring of the patient should be necessary in comparison with that required for general anaesthesia; nevertheless, monitoring for consciousness and oxygen saturation for this procedure is necessary.
8. May produce a varying degree of amnesia.

Indications for Sedating Children in Dental Practice -

❖ Dental Anxiety:

- Anxiety denotes a feeling of general apprehension without any specific cause, which may range from fear of a dental local anaesthetic to an apprehension of a high-speed drill.

❖ Fear of specific procedures:

- Sometimes, even generally cooperative children get fearful of certain procedures, such as receiving local anaesthesia or hearing the sound of an air-rotor. In such situations, nitrous oxide may be of enormous help due to its anxiolytic and analgesic action in allowing these procedures to be completed satisfactorily.

❖ Medically compromised patients or those with mental/physical disabilities:

- Children with special health care needs are generally predisposed to much higher anxiety levels during dental visits. This may be attributed to fear of unfamiliar environments, difficulty with expressing feelings, and hypersensitivity to sensory stimuli. The success of nitrous oxide in controlling such anxiety is

conditioned by the nature and severity of the child's condition. Therefore, it should be considered as a first option before more profound levels of sedation or even general anaesthesia are considered.

Contraindications of Conscious Sedation -

- Taking into account all contraindications for sedation, **pregnancy, known allergies, or possible drug interactions** stand as absolute contraindications.
- Patients on **psychotropic medications** should be carefully sedated, as these drugs will permit a possible synergistic effect with others that may lead to an increased level of sedation than originally intended.
- Certain groups of patients are special cases due to the increased risk of complications, especially those with serious systemic conditions: **chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), two or more coexisting illnesses, or disorders contributing to upper airway obstruction.**
- Common disorders contributing to **upper airway obstruction** are obesity and sleep apnoea.
- Inhalation sedation should be avoided for patients with **upper respiratory tract infections, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, and recent middle ear surgery** or current infections.

Routes of Administration -

- Oral
- Inhalational
- Parenteral

Level of Sedation	Responsiveness	Airway	Spontaneous Ventilation	Cardiovascular Function
Minimal Sedation (Anxiolysis)	Normal response to verbal stimulation	Unaffected	Unaffected	Unaffected
Moderate Sedation/Analgesia	Purposeful response to verbal or tactile stimulation	No intervention required	Adequate	Usually maintained

(Conscious Sedation)				
Deep Sedation	Purposeful response after repeated or painful stimulation	Intervention may be required	May be inadequate	Usually maintained
General Anaesthesia	Unarousable even with painful stimulus	Intervention often required	Frequently inadequate	May be impaired

Levels of Sedation

Conscious Sedation Challenges –

1. *Variability in Patient Response:*

- Children respond to sedatives with such varying degrees that it becomes difficult to ascertain predictive parameters as to the depth and duration of sedation. Such variability can lead to instances of oversedation even when given within the doses recommended.

2. *Airway Management Problems:*

- The maintenance of a patent airway during sedation is vital. Because of their anatomical differences, children are prone to airway obstructions that may also be exacerbated by suspension of the protective airway reflexes due to sedation.

3. *Behaviour -*

- Anxiety, fear, and noncompliant behaviour may interfere with sedation procedures. In some cases, a child's behaviour may be so severe that sedation cannot adequately manage it, requiring alternate managements or deeper levels of sedation.

4. *Medical Comorbidities -*

- Children with any underlying illness, such as one of the respiratory or cardiovascular systems, always pose a potential threat during sedation. A full assessment before sedation will reduce the chances of these problems occurring.

5. *Parental Concerns and Consent -*

- Informed consent entails allaying parental worries regarding possible side effects and success of sedation. It is important to communicate adequately and educate the parents on the procedure and its associated risks.

6. *Training and Expertise -*

- Training in paediatric sedation and emergencies must be provided to dentists. Without proper training, there is a greater likelihood of sedation-related untoward events.

7. *Monitoring and Equipment -*

- Continuous monitoring of vital signs during sedation is crucial. Inability to use proper monitoring equipment or recognize early signs of distress may lead to complications that could have been prevented.

Sedation and Dental Extractions for Children -

1. *Reduction of Pain and Anxiety -*

- There is a documented advantage of the use of conscious sedation for promoting decreased pain perception and anxiety during extraction procedures in children.
- Medicines being used commonly are midazolam, nitrous oxide, ketamine, and propofol (singly or in combinations).

2. *Cooperation and Behaviour Management -*

- Sedation promotes better cooperation behaviour.
- Children will usually stay still to follow instructions from the dentist when conscious sedation is applied.

3. *Safety and Complications -*

- Conscious sedation can be safe if carried out according to protocol but does present some risks-comprising hypoxia, nausea, vomiting, and airway obstruction.
- Preoperative screening and monitoring are paramount.

4. *Parent Satisfaction -*

- There appears to be greater satisfaction from the parents when sedation is applied, having the reason of less trauma for the child.

5. *Recovery Time* -

- Recovery time will vary with the type of sedation used -
 - Nitrous oxide: quick recovery (15-30 min) approximately.
 - Oral sedative agents: prolonged recovery (~1-2 hours).

Procedure for Conscious Sedation -

❖ **Pre- Procedure Assessment** -

- Before sedation, a pre-procedure comprehensive assessment should typically be done. That way, the dentist or surgeon can ascertain whether conscious sedation will be suitable for the patient and guarantee his safety. This assessment usually includes:
- **The Medical History Review:** Looking at prior medical histories such as heart disease, respiratory problems, or any chronic illness directly affecting the security of the procedure.
- **Allergies:** General allergy checking for medications including sedatives and anaesthetics.
- **Medications:** Knowing any medicines currently taken by the patient since some of them may interact negatively with sedatives and might change the response of the body to them.
- **Age and Weight:** Setting appropriate levels of and dosages for sedation with reference to age, weight, and overall health.
- This entire examination manages to reduce as far as possible risks, besides ensuring the medical fitness of the patient for the procedure.

❖ **Administration of Sedatives** –

- Once the pre-procedure assessment has been done, the appropriate sedative(s) will be administered.
- Depending on the chosen form of sedation, this might consist of:
- **Nitrous Oxide (Laughing Gas):** A mask is placed over the nose for administering this mild nitrous oxide avenue of sedation that allows the patient to be relaxed. Commonly, this is used for mild to moderate sedation, providing both relief from anxiety and analgesia (pain relief). Immediately after the procedure, such patients typically recover within minutes.
- **Midazolam (Oral or IV):** This benzodiazepine is often utilized for causing collateral moderate sedation. It will bring upon consumption or IV infusion the following effects: drowsiness, amnesic

forgetfulness, and calmness during the procedure. It's mostly administered to patients who show moderate levels of anxiety or fear regarding the procedure.

- **Fentanyl (IV):** This opioid is used primarily for pain management but also increases comfort for the extraction after the patient's sedation effects. Frequently administered in combination with other sedatives, it balances the combined effects of sedation with pain management.
- The dentist or oral surgeon will monitor the patient's vitals and response to sedation throughout this phase.

❖ **During the Procedure -**

- Once the sedation takes effect, the patient will become relaxed, usually awake, but at all times will not be bothered regarding the extraction procedure. The patient here may feel groggy or actually fall into slight sleep but is still responsive to requests when needed.
- During the removal:
 - The dentist is going to carefully extract the tooth or teeth with the right surgical instrument.
 - Sedation ensures that the patient does not feel any pain so that the discomfort and anxiety of the procedure are reduced.
 - Most cases will involve the local anaesthesia being injected directly around the extraction site in conjunction with the sedative agents to block pain entirely.
 - This often reduces the memory of the patient concerning the event, thus making the event less traumatizing in the future.

❖ **Post-Procedure Care –**

- After the extraction procedure of the tooth is completed, the case will enter into the recovery phase.
- Sedation will begin to wear off, with the patient being monitored further by the dentist.
- Important steps in post-procedure care include:
 - **Monitoring:** Close monitoring of the patient for side effects of sedation and the vital signs-heart rate, blood pressure, oxygen levels-also normalizes in this period.
 - **Time Taken for Recovery:** Most patients start waking quite rapidly post-procedure. However, some patients tend to experience drowsiness for very limited hours.

- **Instruction for Home Care:** The dentist or the oral surgeon will provide instructions on how to follow up after surgery, in addition to or with examples of pain management when using over-the-counter medicines, food restrictions, and recovery rest guidelines.
- **Follow-Up:** Thus, he may suggest scheduling a revisit for physiologic courses during restoration to monitor recovery and manage any complication encountered.

Effects of Tooth Extraction with Conscious Sedation -

Category	Effects
Immediate Effects	- Reduced anxiety - Pain control - Drowsiness
Post-Operative Effects	- Sleepiness - Nausea/vomiting - Minor confusion
Psychological Effects	- Positive dental experiences - Possible dependency on sedation
Rare Serious Effects	- Respiratory issues - Allergic reactions - Behavioural changes

Drugs used for Conscious Sedation in Children with Dosage Recommendations -

Drug	Type	Recommended Dosage for Children	Notes
Nitrous Oxide	Inhalational Sedative	30-50% nitrous oxide with oxygen (balance oxygen for safety)	Sedation, psychoprophylactic remedy, analgesia and at rescheduled timings.
Midazolam	Benzodiazepine (Oral/IV)	Oral: 0.25-0.5 mg/kg (max 20 mg) IV: 0.05-0.1 mg/kg (max 5 mg)	Sedation, anxiolysis, and amnesia, usually 30 to 60 minutes preoperatively.
Diazepam (Valium)	Benzodiazepine (Oral/IV)	Oral: 0.2-0.5 mg/kg (max 10)	Sedation and anxiety relief that generally gets

		mg) IV: 0.05-0.1 mg/kg (max 5 mg)	started about 30-60 minutes prior to the procedure.
Fentanyl	Opioid Analgesic (IV)	IV: 0.5-1 mcg/kg (max 50 mcg)	Provides analgesia, typically in conjunction with benzodiazepines for sedation.
Ketamine	Dissociative Anaesthetic (IV/IM)	IV: 1-2 mg/kg (max 5 mg/kg) IM: 3-5 mg/kg	Produces dissociation, amnesia, and analgesia, and is frequently used in conjunction with benzodiazepines.
Hydroxyzine	Antihistamine (Oral/IM)	Oral: 0.5-1 mg/kg (max 50 mg) IM: 0.5 mg/kg (max 50 mg)	Frequently utilized as an adjunct for sedation, anti-emesis, and calming.
Promethazine	Antihistamine (Oral/IM)	Oral: 0.5 mg/kg (max 25 mg) IM: 0.25-0.5 mg/kg (max 25 mg)	Usually given for sedation and antiemetic effects; frequently given with other sedatives for a fuller effect.

Consequences of Conscious Sedation -

- Conscious sedation will be a medically controlled state of depressed consciousness in which a patient can help while maintaining airway control, protective reflexes, and the ability to respond to verbal or physical stimuli.
- Conscious sedation has got extensive applications in routine dental, medical, and surgical procedures. **However, it has positive and negative consequences associated with it.**
- They are as follows:
 1. **Intended (Therapeutic) Effects -**
 - These are the expected effects in conscious sedation:
 - i. **Anxiolysis:** primarily to relieve anxiety in particularly phobic patients and children.
 - ii. **Amnesia:** Either complete or partial forgetting of events during the procedure, thus reducing psychological trauma.
 - iii. **Analgesia:** Reduction of the perception of pain.
 - iv. **Sedation:** Calmness and relaxation without deep unconsciousness.

- v. **Cooperation:** The patient is awake and, therefore, more likely to make the procedure successful.

2. Physiological and Psychological Effects -

A. Respiratory Effects -

- i. **Airway Obstruction:** Muscle-related tongue fallback in supine position.
- ii. **Hypoventilation:** Mainly phenomenon seen when benzodiazepines or opioids are implicated, sequent hypoxia.
- iii. **Apnoea:** might happen once over-sedation and drug overlapping actions are present.

B. Cardiovascular Effects -

- i. **Hypotension:** Can occur with vasodilation or decreased sympathetic tone.
- ii. **Bradycardia/Tachycardia:** Typically, due to vagal stimulation or some compensatory mechanisms.
- iii. **Cardiac arrhythmias:** Rare but not impossible, especially in patients having underlying cardiac issues.

C. Central Nervous System Effects -

- i. The patient will be drowsy and disoriented when the procedure ends.
- ii. In sensitive patients/drug interactions, prolonged sedation may occur.
- iii. Paradoxical reactions may occur, such as agitation or aggression, particularly among paediatric and geriatric patients.

D. Gastrointestinal Effects -

- i. **Nausea and vomiting:** Especially happen with opiates or blood swallow during dental procedures.
- ii. **Aspiration risk:** Occurs when vomiting takes place in a semi-conscious state.

3. Pharmacological Effects -

- i. **Drug interactions:** Several of the sedatives interact with other medicines, including antidepressants and antihypertensives.
- ii. **Allergic reactions:** Very rare but could happen due to the hypersensitivity of sedative agents.

- iii. **Prolonged drug action:** The drug action often gets protracted in the elderly patients and also in those with conditions of hepatic/renal impairment.

4. Behavioural and Cognitive Effects -

- i. **Short-term memory impairment:** Quite typical, especially in cases of benzodiazepines.
- ii. **Psychomotor recovery** takes time, especially in the early post-procedure periods affecting driving ability or operation of machinery.
- iii. **Altered decision-making:** The patient may not remember instructions given during recovery.

5. Legal and Ethical Issues -

- i. **Informed consent:** due to an altered state of consciousness, which is a legal requirement.
- ii. **Responsibility of escort:** Patients have to escort post procedure as judgment and coordination is compromised.
- iii. **Monitoring standards:** Monitoring shortcomings can lead to legal topics in case adverse events take place.

6. Risk for Over-sedation and Progression to Deep Sedation -

- i. **Protective reflexes** lost (e.g., gag reflex).
- ii. **Airway compromise** and need for airway management.
- iii. **Cardiopulmonary arrest** (the very rare, but serious risks for overdose or lack of monitoring).

Mortality and Morbidity of Conscious Sedation -

➤ Mortality (Death) -

- Rare but Serious: Mortality related to conscious sedation in children is a rare event, especially when done by trained professionals in a controlled environment.
- Most deaths occur due to airway obstruction, respiratory depression, or overdose, especially when guidelines for monitoring and dosing are not followed.
- With less risk in settings that lack adequate emergency preparedness and environments that use multiple sedative medications simultaneously.

➤ Morbidity (Complications) -

❖ **Minor morbidities:**

- Nausea and vomiting
- Prolonged drowsiness
- Behavioural changes after the procedure

❖ **Serious morbidities:**

- Respiratory depression
- Airway obstruction
- Hypoxia (low oxygen levels)
- Aspiration

Conscious Sedation: A Safe Choice -

- **The Protective Reflexes Remain Active** - Under conscious sedation, the child remains responsive to verbal commands/light touch. Protective airway reflexes (coughing and swallowing) are maintained, providing a lesser risk for aspiration or airway obstruction as compared to deep sedation or general anaesthesia.
- **Titrated Dosing and Careful Monitoring** - Sedation drugs are administered in a titrated manner, with ongoing monitoring of their effects during therapy. Early signs of complications are detected using pulse oximetry, with capnography, heart rate, and blood pressure monitoring included routinely.
- **Lesser Respiratory and Cardiovascular Depression** - In conscious sedation, the sedative doses that are required quite generally are low as compared with deep sedation or general anaesthesia. Thus, there is lesser depression of breathing and heart action, adding to the critical risk.
- **Guidelines and Training Well Established** - Directly from these protocols of practice, issued by such professional organizations as the *American Academy of Paediatrics*, the *American Society of Anaesthesiologists* and the *American Academy of Paediatric Dentistry*, sedation practice beyond electrosurgery becomes a therapy. Only trained staff is allowed to apply paediatric sedation, specifically in the management of the airway and under emergency resuscitation.
- **Shorter Recovery Time** - Because sedation is light to moderate, the patients will wake up shortly and have a faster recovery time with

fewer residual effects of the drugs. Thus, the quick recovery diminishes the risk of delayed complications after discharge.

- **Very Careful Patient Selection** - Pre-sedation evaluation according to a medical history, physical exam, and ASA classification confirms that only appropriate candidates are being selected. Such high-risk children may need to be referred for anaesthesia in a more controlled setting, for example, in the case of severe asthma, obstructive sleep apnea, etc.

Controversies in Paediatric Use –

1. Overuse and Dependency Concerns -

- There is a growing concern about the overuse of nitrous oxide in paediatric dentistry. Some practitioners may administer it too frequently, potentially leading to a desensitization effect where children may become less responsive to its calming effects over time.

2. Potential for Abuse -

- Although rare, there have been instances where nitrous oxide was misused recreationally by adolescents. This misuse can lead to serious health risks, including neurological damage and vitamin B12 deficiency.

3. Ethical Considerations -

- The use of nitrous oxide in children raises ethical questions about consent and autonomy. Some argue that children may not fully understand the implications of sedation, leading to potential issues regarding informed consent.

Controversies in Adult Use -

1. Long-Term Health Risks -

- Chronic exposure to nitrous oxide, especially in occupational settings, has been linked to long-term health issues such as neurological damage and reproductive harm.

2. Recreational Misuse -

- Nitrous oxide is sometimes used recreationally for its euphoric effects. This practice, known as "huffing," can lead to serious health risks, including hypoxia and nerve damage.

3. Regulatory and Safety Standards -

- There is inconsistency in the regulation and safety standards surrounding the use of nitrous oxide. In some regions, its use is not adequately monitored, leading to potential misuse and health risks.

To Conclude: Points to Remember –

- The use of sedation is significant for pain management and alleviating anxiety during dental treatment, essentially rendering it a comforting and pleasant experience for children.
- Conscious sedation, usually safe and effective, offers a wide safety margin and a valuable alternative to general anaesthesia.
- The extraction of teeth usually under conscious sedation in children would reduce anxiety, enhance the tolerance for the procedure, and promote a quick recovery after the procedure.
- Most of the effects are mild and transient; however, rare but more serious complications must always be in the mind of the operator.
- ***In general, conscious sedation applied appropriately and with trained supervision will greatly enhance the dental experience for paediatric patients.***

BIBLIOGRAPHY:

1. Locker D, Liddell A, Dempster L, Shapiro D. Age of onset of dental anxiety. J Dent Res. 1999;78(3):790–6
2. Nelson TM, Xu Z. Paediatric dental sedation: challenges and opportunities. Clin Cosmet Investig Dent. 2015; 7:97–106
3. Hallonsten AL, Jensen B, Raadal M, Veerkamp J, Hosey MT, Poulsen S. EAPD guidelines on sedation in paediatric dentistry. Eur Arch Paediatr Dent. 2005;6(1):15–21
4. Hosey MT. Managing anxious children: the use of conscious sedation in paediatric dentistry. Int J Paediatr Dent. 2002;12(5):359–72
5. Norwegian Medicines Agency. Therapeutic recommendation: benzodiazepines for control of anxiety and avoidance during dental

- treatment. Oslo: Norwegian Medicines Agency; 2003. Report No.: 2003:03
6. Bennett CR. Conscious sedation: an alternative to general anaesthesia. *J Dent Res.* 1984;63(6):832–3
 7. Holmes RD, Girdler NM. A study to assess the validity of clinical judgment in determining paediatric dental anxiety and related outcomes of management. *Int J Paediatr Dent.* 2005;15(3):169–76
 8. Chanpong B, Haas DA, Locker D. Need and demand for sedation or general anaesthesia in dentistry: a national survey of the Canadian population. *Anesth Prog.* 2005;52(1):3–11
 9. Priya KV, Gaur D, Ganesh M, Kumar CS. Conscious sedation in paediatric dentistry: a review. *Int J Contemp Med Res.* 2016;3(6):1577–80
 10. Working Group on Guidelines Development for Intravenous Sedation in Dentistry, Japanese Dental Society of Anaesthesiology. Practice guidelines for intravenous conscious sedation in dentistry (second edition, 2017). *Anesth Prog.* 2018;65(4): e1–18
 11. Kapur A, Kapur V. Conscious sedation in dentistry. *Ann Maxillofac Surg.* 2018;8(2):320–32
 12. Canfield CP. Oversedation in a paediatric patient: case report. *Pediatr Dent.* 1987;9(3):193–5
 13. Sakhuja M, Jain A, Kumar A. Paediatric airway management. *Anesth Essays Res.* 2014;8(2):150–4
 14. Houpt MI, Koenigsberg SR, Weiss NJ, Desjardins PJ. Comparison of chloral hydrate with and without hydroxyzine in the sedation of young children. *Pediatr Dent.* 1985;7(1):41–6
 15. Lee JY, Vann WF Jr, Roberts MW. A cost analysis of treating paediatric dental patients using general anaesthesia versus conscious sedation. *Pediatr Dent.* 2000;22(1):27–32
 16. American Academy of Paediatric Dentistry. Informed consent. *Pediatr Dent.* 2019;41(6):312–6
 17. American Dental Association. Guidelines for the use of sedation and general anaesthesia by dentists. *J Am Dent Assoc.* 2016;147(7):527–38
 18. American Academy of Paediatric Dentistry. Guidelines for monitoring and management of paediatric patients before, during,

- and after sedation for diagnostic and therapeutic procedures. *Pediatr Dent*. 2019;41(4): E26–52
19. Wilson S, et al. Effectiveness of nitrous oxide sedation in paediatric dental extractions. *Pediatr Dent J*. 2022;32(1):15–22
20. Al-Zahrani A, et al. Behavioural management with conscious sedation in paediatric dentistry. *Int J Paediatr Dent*. 2021;31(3):245–51
21. Cote CJ, Wilson S. Guidelines for monitoring and management of paediatric patients during and after sedation for diagnostic and therapeutic procedures. *Paediatrics*. 2019;143(6): e20191000
22. Chambers DW, et al. Parental satisfaction with conscious sedation in children undergoing extractions. *J Dent Res*. 2020;99(5):542–7
23. Clark MS, Brunick AL. *Handbook of nitrous oxide and oxygen sedation*. 4th ed. St. Louis: Elsevier Health Sciences; 2015
24. Gupta A, Gupta N, Narayanan MRV. Current status of nitrous oxide use in paediatric patients. *World J Clin Pediatr*. 2022; 11(2):93–104
25. De Gruyter. Nitrous oxide abuse: direct measurement for diagnosis and follow-up: update on kinetics and impact on metabolic pathways. *Clin Chem Lab Med*. 2023

CHAPTER 15

ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE IN DENTAL EXTRACTIONS



Dr. Keerthana Elumalai

BDS, PGDHM

Specialist in Fast-Track Clinic &

Comprehensive Patient Care

Vinayaka Mission's Sankarachariyar Dental College

Vinayaka Mission's Research Foundation

(Deemed To Be University)

Salem, Tamil Nadu, India

-
- Innovations have become an integral part of our day-to-day life. Since technology has become an additional finger in our palm, missing out on it means losing a superlative feature.
 - The world is buzzing and revolving around man-made intelligence; amalgamating this artificial intelligence with natural intelligence is a smart way to amp up our expertise in our field.
 - **This chapter explores the possible ways of incorporating AI in the field of dental extractions.**
 - Extractions are one of the oldest treatments in dentistry that are still living even beyond ages. The availability of so many surrogate treatments have for sure reduced the burden extractions carry, but yet they aren't fully relieved.
 - **Extractions are the last sought treatment modality yet have a major place in everyday OPD. Using AI in this mandatory field will help us with the multiple challenges that we have in this surgical procedure.**

Dental Extractions:

- Dentistry is a long-standing branch of medicine that has evolved significantly over the decades.
- Tooth decay could have been the first dental ailment that the human race would have faced. **Dental caries did not appear in the hunter gatherer society, where there was less carbohydrate in their diet.** They had a predominant fibre rich diet.
- **Tooth decay appeared when the hunter society turned agrarian.** This change in civilisation led to the change in diet habits from carbohydrate less and fibre rich diet to a carb rich fibre less diet. And subsequently tooth decay arises, leading to the rise of dental treatments.
- Dental extractions have posed several risks over the years and has also evolved tremendously. From painful, septic and ambiguous prognosis of the treatment, extractions have now progressed to a well-planned, designed, surgical procedure exhibiting a precise prognosis. Forceps have evolved from a mere tweezer to what it is currently now.
- Another turn in the generation of extraction have occurred with the **introduction of radiographs**, including 3D radiographs like CBCTs where the treatment planning can be done in a precise manner. Checking radiographs have also significantly reduced the risk of human errors.
- **And now currently is the time where extractions are moving towards another era which could probably become the golden era in the field of extractions, by the usage of artificial intelligence.** It's a combination of an oldest treatment and a newest technology to bring the best possibility outcome for the surgeon and the patient.

What is Artificial Intelligence?

- Artificial intelligence is a term used to describe the capacity of machines to do human like activities.
- IBM, pioneer in the field of AI, describes **“Artificial intelligence (AI) as a technology that enables computers and machines to**

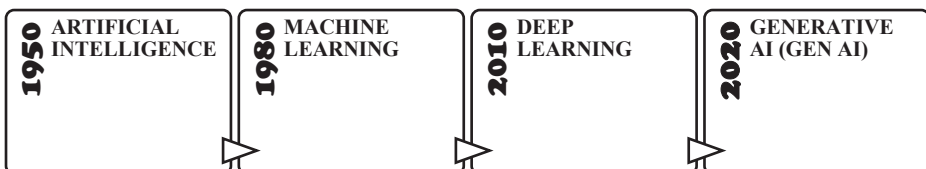
simulate human learning, comprehension, problem solving, decision making, creativity and autonomy.”

- AI applied devices and applications can see, recognize and identify objects, understand and respond to human languages.
- They have the capacity to learn from new information and previous experiences. They are capable of making recommendations to both users and experts.
- In short, they can act independently, replacing the need for human intervention.

History of Artificial Intelligence –

- Though AI is a very recent feature of our lives, it has a history dating back to around 69 years.
- **AI begun in 1956 at a Dartmouth workshop** - a summer research project focused on "thinking machines".
- The term "**Artificial Intelligence**" was first coined in a workshop proposal titled "*A Proposal for the Dartmouth Summer Research Project on Artificial Intelligence*," submitted by John McCarthy of Dartmouth College. Until then AI was just an idea written at papers.
- Dartmouth workshop is considered as the official launcher in the field of Artificial Intelligence.
- Despite the buoyancy AI and its creators had, AI had a hibernation period from 1974-1980. It is known as the “**Artificial Intelligence’s Winter**”. This mainly happened due to the unrealistic expectations from AI and the unavailability of computing systems to carry out the complex tasks.
- In the late 1990s, Artificial Intelligence experienced a resurgence after **Deep Blue’s** intervention (IBM’s expert system), where they trained AI to play checkers. **Their AI system was astonishingly able to beat the World Chess Champion, Garry Kasparov.**

Artificial Intelligence Tools -



❖ **Machine Learning –**

- AI is a series of derivative concepts that has emerged over the time.
- Underneath Artificial Intelligence, is **Machine Learning**. ML is a subset of AI. *It creates models by making the algorithm work on taking decisions or making prediction based on the available data.*
- ML is a very sophisticated form of statistical analysis. *The L or learning in ML means that the model will go through all the available data and bring up a decision.* Unlike coding or programming, the machine now learns from the available data and is able to derive a solution.
- The most common type of Machine Learning is **Neural Network**, also known as **Artificial Neural Network**. This algorithm is modelled with reference to a human's brain structure and function. This type of ML is used for tasks that identify complex patterns and relationships in large amount of data.
- **Machine Learning is of two types, supervised ML and unsupervised ML.**
- Supervised ML is the simplest form of machine learning.

❖ **Deep Learning -**

- Deep Learning is a subset of machine learning that uses multi-layered neural networks, called **deep neural networks**, that more closely simulate the complex decision-making power of the human brain.
- Neural networks involve nodes and statistical relationships between those nodes to model the way that our minds work.
- Deep neural networks include an input layer, and an output layer. In between ranges as many layers from 3 to 100's of hidden layers. **These hidden layers are what that makes deep learning an unsupervised learning.**
- They can automate the extraction of features from large, unlabelled and unstructured data sets, and make their own predictions about what the data represents.
- The technical nuances of deep learning have also enabled the following like **semi-supervised learning, self-supervised learning, reinforcement learning and transfer learning.**
- *The rise of deep learning offers fascinating perspectives for the automation of dental and medical image analysis.*

❖ **Generative Artificial Intelligence -**

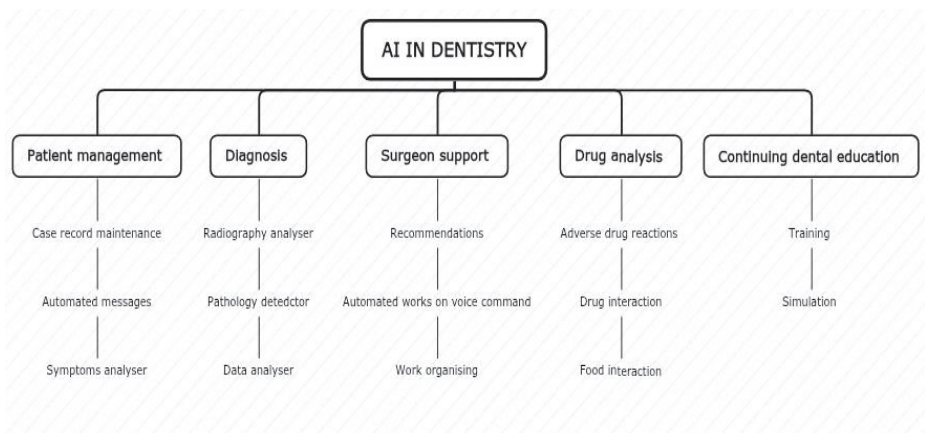
- Generative AI or Gen AI is a deep learning model that can create complex original content like images, videos, audio, text formats as a user prompts.
- At a high level, generative models encode a simplified representation of their training data, and then draw from that representation to create new work that's similar, but not identical, to the original data.
- Generative models have been used for years in statistics to analyse numerical data. **But over the last decade, they evolved to analyse and generate more complex data types.**
- This evolution coincided with the emergence of three sophisticated deep learning model types such as **variational autoencoders, diffusion models & transformers.**
- Gen AI operates in 3 phases:
 - Training
 - Tuning
 - Generation, Evaluation and Tuning

Benefits Of Artificial Intelligence -

1. **Automation:** AI is efficient in automating the repetitive tasks, reducing the need for continuous human employment.
2. **Predictive maintenance:** AI can analyse machine data to predict when maintenance is needed, minimizing downtime and reducing costs.
3. **Efficacy:** Artificial Intelligence is capable of reducing the risk of human errors and its related consequences.
4. **Decision making:** AI can analyse vast amounts of data to identify patterns and insights, leading to faster and more informed decisions.
5. **Data analysis:** AI can process and analyse large amounts of data much faster than humans, enabling quicker identification of trends and insights.
6. **Availability:** AI systems can operate continuously, providing support and services around the clock.
7. **Assistance:** AI can provide digital assistance to individuals in various aspects of their lives, from managing their schedules to answering questions.

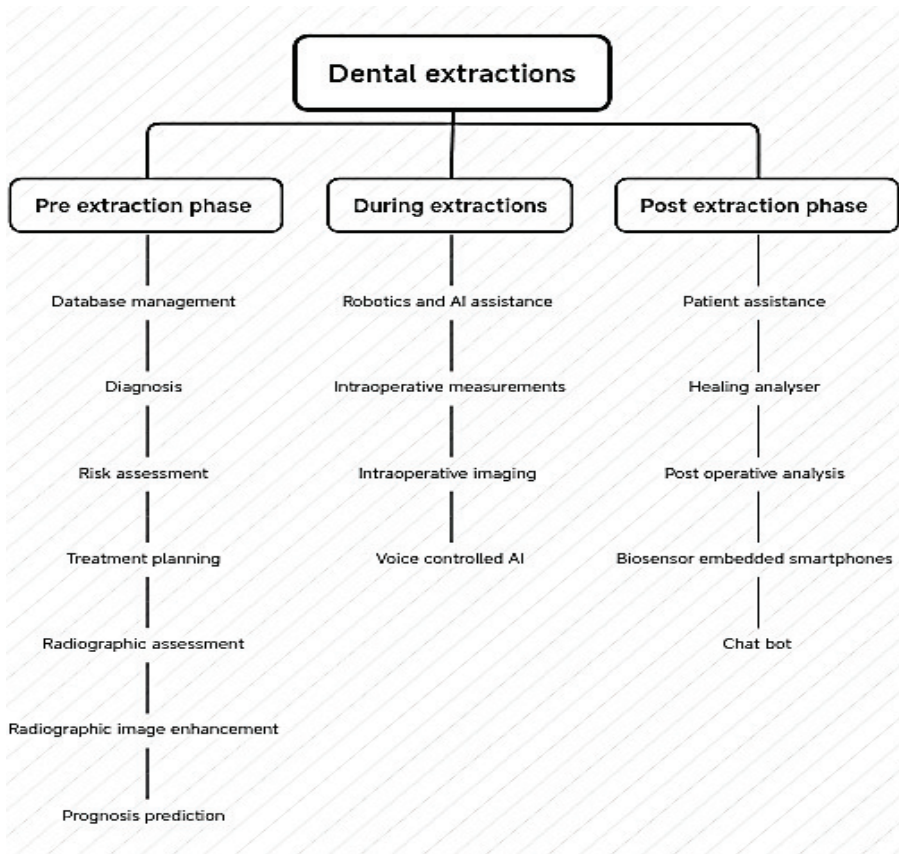
Application of Artificial Intelligence in Dentistry -

- Dentistry has seen tremendous changes over the recent years.
- Use of advanced technologies in clinical practice is what that makes dentistry more precise, efficient and moreover comfortable for the patients.
- Recent advancements like **Intraoral Scanners, 3D Printers, Regenerative Dentistry & Virtual Reality** have tremendously improved the standard of dentistry.
- **The application of AI in dentistry is gaining popularity in imaging and pathology, dental radiology, caries detection, electronic record keeping and robotic assistance.**



Artificial Intelligence in Dental Extractions -

- AI plays a significant role in the art of dental extractions.
- For the ease of understanding, let's divide the extraction treatment into three phases: **pre-extraction, during-extraction and post-extraction.**
- Based on this division, let's look into the possibilities where AI is applied in dental extractions.



Artificial Intelligence in the Pre-Extraction Phase -

1. Database management:

- AI is a critical tool in the patient data management. It can manage volumes of healthcare data without the need for physical labour, materials and storage. It allows interoperability and value-based care for the patient. *AI can also highlight the patients with critical illnesses and categorise them according to the priority of their treatment.* Labelling the patients based on urgency, risk and vulnerability can be automated by AI, which enables not only the healthcare professionals to streamline their flow of work, but also the patients to get treatment based on their illnesses.

2. Diagnosis:

- With deep learning (DL) in Artificial Intelligence, diagnosis is made possible. *It can detect dental caries, bone loss, periodontal*

conditions, periapical lesions, lesions or pathologies of the maxillary sinus, TMJ disorders, and other dental anomalies.

3. Assessing the fitness of the patient/ Risk assessment:

- AI can be an excellent database analyser. *It can generate reports about the patients existing medical conditions and if the patient can undergo dental extractions. It can also give recommendations to the surgeon about the precautions that are needed.* Emergency medicines that should be handy for the particular case if any critical scenario arises.

4. Treatment planning:

- AI can analyse the treatment plan proposed and sort out the errors in the planning. *AI can help us in designing the treatment by suggesting to us the armamentarium and the extraction approach by analysing the possible setbacks in the treatment plans. AI can assess the risk, predict the prognosis and calculate the procedure,* based on which it can develop a good treatment plan.

5. Radiographic Assessment:

- Radiographs are an important diagnostic tool in extractions. AI software are available to assess the radiographs and make a diagnosis. By involving a radiographic assessment AI in pre-extraction phases, we can achieve an excellent treatment plan.
- AI assessment tools in radiographs can help us identify:
 - The root anatomy: supernumerary or fractures if present
 - The abnormal root curvatures
 - The orientation estimation of the tooth
 - The position of the tooth drawing W.A.R lines for disimpactions
 - Assessing the proximity of integral structures like nerve canals
 - Exposing the periapical pathology that might affect the treatment plan
 - The amount of bone structures surrounding the root
 - Any abnormalities in the bone patterns like ankylosis, osteosclerosis.
 - Locating the cephalometric landmarks

6. Radiographic image enhancement:

- Deep learning in Artificial Intelligence has led way to improved reconstruction of radiographic images. *Denoising tomographic data allows lower exposure of radiation doses while maintaining the image quality.* AI denoises, deblocks which can overall reduce motion artifacts and metal artifacts in CT and CBCT.

7. Prognosis prediction:

- By predicting the outcome of the proposed treatment plan, AI can effectively predict the prognosis of the treatment. *Machine Learning (ML) can help analyse the data of the patient and predict the prognosis. This could help us bring about a precise treatment plan with high efficacy rates.*

Artificial Intelligence During Dental Extraction -**1. Robotics and AI Assistance:**

- Robotics-assisted surgery has been practiced in many parts of the world in general surgery, paving the way for *robotics-assisted dental extractions*. Researches show that AI aided surgery has improved safety and accuracy of oral surgical procedures. Precisely put, AI has minimised the need of retreatments and other revision surgeries. AI can also act as a guide during the varying steps of extraction. It can give us suggestions of which approach to use, instrumentation, amount of bone removal or soft tissue elevation required, and so on.

2. Intraoperative Measurements:

- Models like ML and DL can help in real time assessment of intraoperative measurements like location to mandibular canal, resection margins, depth of invasion etc. AI can measure the blood loss, length of the surgical procedure while also assessing the patient's vitals during the procedure.

3. AI-Powered Intraoperative Imaging:

- This technique allows us to take radiographs during procedures, which the AI then analyses and reports on any potential risk factors like remaining root stumps or exposed nerve canals.

4. Voice-controlled AI:

- It can be used for accessing the patient data, radiographs, and other required software, which prevents us from touching unsterile surfaces and maintaining a *sterile surgical field*.

Intraoral scanners can be built in with AI, which can analyse the real-time socket position and root position and guide us in immediate implant placements.

Artificial Intelligence in Postoperative Extraction Phase:

- **Assistance:** AI can and should be used in providing post operative instructions to patients. Reminders of what to do and what not to do should be properly guide by using the AI.
- **Healing analysing:** AI can also be used to detect the wound healing and reminding us of the same, enabling us to proceed with further treatments.
- **Post operative analysis:** AI can be used to analyse the socket healing, dry socket formation or broken sutures by giving it a post operative picture. It can help the patient know about their post-op care and when they need to check with the surgeon.
- **Biosensors embedded smartphones:** can be used for monitoring the patient's vitals for health prognostication.
- **Chat bot:** They can provide round the clock query support to the patient and connect them to the doctor if needed.

Enhanced Dentistry Through Fusion of Minds:

- It's limitless to know what the human brain can do. And if we pair it with one of the prodigious creations of the humankind, I'm sure we could achieve whatever we think we could.
- **So, I think it's time to stop debating about if AI is good or bad. If we should use AI or not, for we have moved far from the discussion and started using AI as our natural part.**
- Now we should discus on how AI can help us and how to productively engage it in our field to the betterment of both the surgeon and the patient.

BIBLIOGRAPHY:

1. Schwendicke F, Samek W, Krois J. Artificial Intelligence in Dentistry: Chances and Challenges. J Dent Res. 2020 Jul; 99(7):769-774
2. <https://www.ibm.com/think/topics/artificial-intelligence>
3. *"Stone age man used dentist drill". BBC News. 6 April 2006. Retrieved 24 May 2010*

4. Koutroumpas DC, Lioumi E, Vougiouklakis G. Tooth Extraction in Antiquity. *J Hist Dent*. 2020 Winter; 68(3):127-144. PMID: 33789783
5. Mallineni SK, Sethi M, Punugoti D, Kotha SB, Alkhayal Z, Mubarak S, Almotawah FN, Kotha SL, Sajja R, Nettam V, Thakare AA, Sakhamuri S. Artificial Intelligence in Dentistry: A Descriptive Review. *Bioengineering (Basel)*. 2024 Dec 13;11(12):1267
6. Turosz N, Chęcińska K, Chęciński M, Brzozowska A, Nowak Z, Sikora M. Applications of artificial intelligence in the analysis of dental panoramic radiographs: an overview of systematic reviews. *Dentomaxillofac Radiol*. 2023 Oct;52(7):20230284
7. Rahim A, Khatoon R, Khan TA, Syed K, Khan I, Khalid T, Khalid B. Artificial intelligence-powered dentistry: Probing the potential, challenges, and ethicality of artificial intelligence in dentistry. *Digit Health*. 2024 Nov 11;10:20552076241291345
8. Miragall MF, Knoedler S, Kauke-Navarro M, Saadoun R, Grabenhorst A, Grill FD, Ritschl LM, Fichter AM, Safi AF, Knoedler L. Face the Future-Artificial Intelligence in Oral and Maxillofacial Surgery. *J Clin Med*. 2023 Oct 30;12(21):6843
9. <https://www.laserfiche.com/resources/blog/how-ai-is-a-game-changer-for-healthcare-data-management/>
10. Abdolali F, Zoroofi RA, Otake Y, Sato Y. Automatic segmentation of maxillofacial cysts in cone beam CT images. *Comput Biol Med*. 2016 May 1;72:108-19
11. Yoo JH, Yeom HG, Shin W, Yun JP, Lee JH, Jeong SH, Lim HJ, Lee J, Kim BC. Deep learning based prediction of extraction difficulty for mandibular third molars. *Sci Rep*. 2021 Jan 21;11(1):1954
12. Seah J, Brady Z, Ewert K, Law M. Artificial intelligence in medical imaging: implications for patient radiation safety. *Br J Radiol*. 2021 Oct 1;94(1126):20210406
13. Jaemsuwan S, Arunjarosuk S, Kaboosaya B, Subbalekha K, Mattheos N, Pimkhaokham A. Comparison of the accuracy of implant position among freehand implant placement, static and dynamic computer-assisted implant surgery in fully edentulous patients: a non-randomized prospective study. *Int J Oral Maxillofac Surg*. 2023 Feb;52(2):264-271